

STATE OF NATIONS
PAST AND PRESENT
THREE SHILLINGS



Presented to
The Library
of the
University of Toronto
by

Professor Wrong.

Miss Brewster

as regards



HMod
B3997s

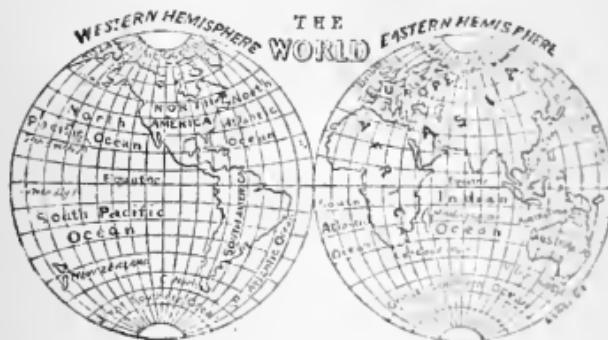
STATE OF NATIONS,

PAST AND PRESENT.

ONE THOUSAND QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Selected from Modern History.

BY P. A. BEDDOME.



LONDON :

THOMAS ARNOLD, PATERNOSTER ROW.

1844.

الله يحيى
الله يحيى
الله يحيى
الله يحيى

IN submitting to the public an effort to rivet, on youthful memories, a chain of Modern History, in which the formation of national character is traced to the influence of national events, it will be candid and satisfactory to state, that the facts and conclusions are from acknowledged authorities; the language only being altered so far as the black letter required, or in the selections from modern works, to suit the form of question and answer.

Cedar Lodge, 1844.

A very faint, grayscale background image of a classical building, likely a temple or a large hall, featuring four prominent columns supporting a triangular pediment. The building is set against a light, textured background.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

CONTENTS.

BARBARIANS and Romans.—Connexion between the Goths and Greeks. — Pelasgi. — Hellenes. — Thracians. — Teutonic branches. — Eumolpus and Erechtheus. — The Orgia and Trieterica.—Greek Poets.—Origin of the Greek Letters.—Northern Languages.—Sarmatae.—Sclavi.—Asiatic clans.—Commerce on the Euxine.—Argonautic Expedition.—Leuco.—Dominion of the Thracian Kings.—Xerxes.—Hestiaeus.—Privilege of the Athenians.—Duty upon Exports.—Paphlagonians.—Timotheus.—Origin of the terms Barbarian, German, Saxon. — Teutones and Celts. — Saxon names.—Migrations of the Barbarians.—Characters of the Alemanni and Romans.—Great Gothic Fleet.—Claudius.—Aurelian.—Battles of Placentia, Fano, and Pavia.—Victoria.—Tetricus.—Battle of Chalons.—Zenobia, "Queen of the East."—Odenathus.—Mæonius.—Siege of Palmyra.—Ariovistus.—Nervii.—State of Society amongst the Gauls and Germans.—Domitian. — Huns. — Attila. — Divisions of the Northern Nations.—Odoacer.—Theodoric. 1 to 51

The Dark Ages.—Elements of European Government.—The Laws of the Barbarians.—Salique Code.—Criminal Punishments.—Fines.—Civil Liberty,—Capitularies of Charlemagne

52 to 85

Mahomet.—Hashem.—Abdol Motalleb.—Abdallah and Amina.—Abu Taleb.—Cadijah.—Faith of Islam.—The Koran.—Degeneracy of Jews and Christians.—The Caliphs.—The Koran, a Theological and Civil Code.—St. Sophia.—Mahomet's Empire.—Mahomet's Disciples.—Abubeker.—Othman.—Christianity and Mahometanism. — Death of

Mahomet.—The Empires of the East.—The Siege of Damascus.—Caled.—Derar.—Thomas the Greek.—The Wife of Aban.—Abu Obeidah.—Abdallah.—The Fair of Abyla.—Arabian Women.—Caled's Tomb.—Omar.—Amrou.—The Siege of Alexandria.—Egypt.—Akbah.—Tarik.—Edeco.—Roderic.—Battle of Xerxes.—Count Julian.—Ruin of the Gothic Monarchy.—Treaty of Abdelazig and Theodemir.—Statues of Carcassone.—Mohammed.—Ibrahim ... 86 to 160

Persia.—Battle of Cadessia.—The Ghebers.—Atush Kudu.—Kohé Gebr.—Magian Ceremonies.—Parsees at Oulam.—Magnificence of the Caliphs.—Almansor.—Bagdad.—Mahadi.—Almamon.—Moctader.—Palace of Zehra.—Abdalrahman.—Haroun al Raschid and Nicephorus.—Carmath.—Pillage of Mecca.—The Well of Zemzene.—The Caaba .. 161 to 188

The Dynasty of the Aglabites.—The Edrisites.—The Taherites.—The Soffarides.—The Sansanides.—The Abbassides.—The Toulunides and Ikshidites.—The Namadanites.—The Bowides.—Decline and Fall of the Caliphs .. 189 to 198

Theophano.—Wolodomir.—Tactics and Character of the Greeks.—The Greek Fire.—The Character of the Saracens.—Moslem and Roman Warriors.—Order of Battle.—The Franks.—Character and Tactics.—The Nobles of France.—Justinian 199 to 211

Bulgarians.—Basil the Second.—Russians.—Theophilus and Lewis.—Normans.—Varangians of the Baltic.—Ruric.—Waladimir.—Byzantine Court.—Naval Expedition against Constantinople.—Oleg.—Igor.—Jaroslaus.—Swatoslaus.—John Zimisces.—Olga 212 to 231

Siege of Bari.—Normans in Naples and Sicily.—Count Rainulf.—Robert Guiscard.—Tancred.—Trade of Amalphi.—Government of Amalphi.—Mariner's Compass.—Roger.—Siege of Durazzo.—Alexius.—Gaita.—Flight of Alexius.—Henry of Germany.—Pillage of Rome.—Kings of the Latin world.—William the Bad.—William the Good.—Henry the Sixth.—Tancred the Second.—Final Extinction of the Normans 232 to 261

Mahomet the Gaznevide.—Holy War against the Gentoos.—The Pagoda of Sumnat.—Letter from the Persian Sultana.—The Seljukians.—Togrul Beg.—Alp Arslan.—Malek.—Division

of the Seljukian Empire.—Conquest of Jerusalem by the Turks.—Pilgrimages to the Holy Land from Europe.—Hakem.—Atsiz the Carizmian.—Emir Ortok	262 to 287
State of Society.—Feudal System and the Papal Power.—Rise and Progress of Commerce.—Effect of the Crusades.—Hereditary Kingdoms of Europe.—Power of the Clergy	288 to 300
France.—Hugh Capet.—Power of the Barons.—Feudal system in France.—Count de Périgord.—“The Truce of the Lord.”—Philip the First	301 to 307
Introduction of the Feudal System in England.—Edward the Confessor’s laws.—English Constitution.—Civil Freedom.—France and England.—The Wittenagemote.—First Burgesses summoned to Parliament.—Aristocratic influence of the Conquest.—Crown of England usurped.—Prerogative of deciding peace and war.—Saxon influence on the Norman Character	308 to 329
Elements of the Constitution of Spain.—Progress of Society in Spain.—Mariana, the Spanish Historian.—War in Spain against the Moors.—Siege of Toledo.—Don Roderigo Dias de Bivar.—Decline of Mahometan power in Spain after the Battle of Toloso.—Alphonso.—Kingdoms of Spain.—Union of Castille and Arragon, under Ferdinand and Isabella.—Expulsion of the Moors.—Legislature.—Feudal System in Spain.—Justiza of Arragon.—The Cortes	330 to 346
Origin of the First Crusade.—Peter the Hermit.—Pope Urban.—Massacre of the Jews on the Moselle and Rhine.—The Fate of the First Crusaders.—Chiefs of the First Crusade.—Godfrey of Bouillon.—Eustace.—Baldwin.—Confederate Force.—European Sovereigns.—Hugh, Count of Vermandois.—Robert, Duke of Normandy.—Robert, Count of Flanders.—Stephen, Count of Chartres, Blois, and Troyes.—Adhemar, Bishop of Puy.—Raymond, Count of St. Giles and Thoulouse.—Bohemond.—Tancred.—Military character of the age.—March of the Princes to Constantinople.—Number of Crusaders.—Loss sustained.—Princess Anne.—Siege of Nice.—Battle of Dorylæum.—Edessa founded.—Siege of Antioch.—Siege of Jerusalem.—Rescue of the Holy City.—Godfrey elected King.—War with the Fatimites.—Battle of Ascalon.—The Dominions and Conquests of Godfrey.—The Assize of Jerusalem	347 to 378

Second Crusade.—Conrad the Third.—Louis the Seventh.—
 Third Crusade.—Frederic Barbarossa.—Conrad's Troop of
 Amazons.—Number of Crusades.—St. Bernard .. 379 to 387

Mamelukes.—Noureddin.—Egypt conquered.—Adhed.—Saladin
 the Great.—Melisenda.—Fulk, Count of Anjou.—Jerusalem
 taken by Saladin.—Siege of Acre.—Philip Augustus and
 Richard Plantagenet.—St. Louis, King of France.—Joinville.
 —Conquest of Damietta.—Mamelukes of Egypt.—Loss of
 Antioch.—Bondvedar, Sultan of Egypt and Syria.—Castles
 of the Hospitalers and Templars destroyed.—Edward the
 First at Acre.—Acre and the Holy Land retaken by the
 Moslems.—Khalil 388 to 408

Constantinople and the Byzantine Court in the Twelfth Century.
 —Alexius Angelus.—Venice founded in the Island of Rialto.
 —Alliance with the French.—Siege of Zara.—Constanti-
 nople besieged and conquered.—Mourzouple.—Second siege,
 and pillage of the Greek capital.—Baldwin.—Appropriation
 of the Greek provinces.—Theodore Lascaris, Emperor of
 Nice.—Bulgarian War.—Emperor Henry, A.D. 1206.—Peter
 of Courtenay, Count of Auxerre.—Yolande.—Pope Honorius.
 —Robert crowned in the Cathedral of St. Sophia.—John of
 Brienne and Mary.—John Ducas Vatases.—Michael Palæo-
 logus.—Charles of Anjou.—Mainfroy.—Sicilian Vespers.—
 Revolution of Athens.—Otho de la Roche.—Walter de
 Brienne.—War with the Catalans.—Andronicus the Elder.
 Andronicus the Younger.—Irene.—Jane, daughter of the
 great Amadée.—John Cantacuzene.—War with the Genoese.
 —Pisani and Doria.—Colony of Pera 409 to 448

Great Eruption of the Moguls and Tartars.—Zingis Khan.—Laws
 of Zingis.—The Faith of Zingis.—China invaded.—Revolt of
 the Khitans.—Treaty between Zingis and the Chinese.—
 Siege of Yeu-King.—Northern provinces of China subdued.—
 Massacre at Otrar.—War between Zingis Khan and Moham-
 med.—Chinese Engineers.—Conquests of the Moguls.—
 Octai.—Gayuk.—Cathay and Mangi.—Use of Gunpowder.—
 Capture of the Fleet of the Song.—Cublai's Expedition to
 Japan.—Cublai's conquests.—Holagou Khan.—Conquest of
 Persia, and the Empire of the Caliphs.—Baton.—Invasion
 of Europe.—Bela.—Emperor Frederic the Second.—Siege of
 Neustadt.—Valour of the Franks.—Sheibani.—Siberia.—
 Discovery of the Icy Sea.—Samoiedes.—Successors of Zingis.
 —The Golden Horde.—Power of the Khan.—Progress of

Civilization.—Caracorum.—Reign of Cublai.—Court of Pekin.—Mogul Emperors expelled from China.—Division of the Mogul Empire.—Borga.—Cazan Khan.—Origin of the Ottoman Turks.—Gelaleddin.—Aladin.—Orthogrul.—Othman.—Orchan.—Conquest of Bithynia.—Divisions of Anatolia.—Loss of the Asiatic provinces.—The Knights of Rhodes.—Theodora.—Ottomans in Europe.—Soliman.—Amurath the First.—Sclavonic Tribes.—The Janizaries.—Battle of Cossova.—Death of Amurath.—Bajazet the First.—Conquest in Asia and Europe.—Invasion of Hungary.—Sigismond.—Battle of Nicopolis.—Crusade and Captivity of the French Princes.—Magnificence of the Ottoman Court.—Manuel.—Constantinople and the Greeks.—Approach of Timour, or Tamerlane

449 to 542

France in the Fourteenth Century.—Reign of John.—The First Dauphin.—The States-General.—Factions of the Royal Family.—Power of the Crown.—Houses of Burgundy and Orleans.—Henry Fifth of England.—The Maid of Orleans.—Charles the Seventh.—Expulsion of the English.—Establishment of a standing Army.—Louis the Eleventh.—Charles the Bold.—Princess Mary of Burgundy.—Negociations

543 to 561.

Timour or Tamerlane.—Carashar Nevian.—Timour's Birthplace.—The Getes.—Timour elected.—Conquests in Persia.—Shah Mansour.—Turkestan.—Kipzak.—Tortamish.—Russia.—Conquests of Hindostan.—Massacre of the Gentoos.—War with Bajazet.—Invasion of Syria and Anatolia.—Destruction of Damascus.—Burning of Aleppo.—Taking of Bagdad.—Battle of Angora.—Death of Bajazet.—Timour at Samarcand.—Royal Marriages.—Preparations for invading China.—Death of Timour.—The game of Chess.—Sharokh.—Usbecks of the North.—Aurungzebe.—Mustapha.—Isa.—Soliman.—Mousa.—Mahomet the First.—Ibrahim.—Amurath the Second.—Reunion of the Ottoman Empire.—State of the Greek Empire.—Siege of Constantinople.—Hereditary Succession.—Military Discipline.—Royal Schools at Boursa, Pera, and Adrianople.—Agiamoglans and Ichoglangs.—Invention and Use of Gunpowder 562 to 609

Eastern Emperors and the Popes.—Andronici.—Cantacuzene.—John Palæologus the First.—John Hawkwood.—Manuel.—John Palæologus the Second.—Greek Language at the Byzantine Court.—Barlaam.—Revival of Greek Literature in

Italy.—Petrarch.—Bocacce.—Manuel Chrysoloras.—Grocy, Linacer, and Latimer.—Nicholas the Fifth 610 to 627

Cosmo de Medicis.—Florence.—Extensive Commerce.—Transactions with the Palæologi.—The Strozzi, Peruzzi, Barbadori, and Albizzi.—Conspiracy against Cosmo.—Imprisonment.—Escape to the Frontier.—Return to Florence.—Successful Trade.—Conspiracy of the Pitti and Venetians.—Piero de Medici.—Lorenzo de Medici.—Field-pieces used.—Flambeaux on the Field of Battle.—Volterra besieged.—Guiliano de Medici.—Pope Sixtus the Fourth.—The Pazzi Conspiracy.—Archbishop of Pisa.—Bandini.—Cady Bashaw, Grand Vizier to Bajazet the Second.—Selim the First.—Commissioner Nardi.—League between the Pope and the King of Naples against the Medici.—Ferrand dissolves the League.—Peace of Italy.—Piero, son of Lorenzo.—Lorenzo, the patron of Literature.—Library of the Medici.—Catharine de Medici.—Michael Angelo.—University founded at Pisa.—Johannes Picus de la Mirandola, Angelus Politianus, Marsilio Ficino, Christofano Laudini, Johannes Lascaris, Demetrius Chalcondilas, and Marcellus Trachamontano.—Theses of Prince della Mirandola.—Charles the Eighth at Florence.—Cardinal Bessarion.—Lodovico Sforza.—Duke of Calabria.—Princess Isabella.—Flight of Piero de Medici.—Estate of Medici abandoned to pillage.—Bernardo Neri.—Savanarola.—Bartolonic de Salviano.—Unsuccessful attempt to surprise Florence.—Paulo Vitelli.—Piero de Soderini.—Cardinal de Medici elected Pope.—Lucretia de Medici.—Giulio.—Giuliano.—Alfonsina degl' Orsini.—Francis the First.—Cardinal Petrucci.—The Thirty-one Cardinals.—Pompey Colonna.—The Heiress of Bologna.—Katherine de Medici.—Pope Leo poisoned by Barnaby Malespina 628 to 687

Amurath the Second.—Double Abdication.—Hungarian Invasion.—Death of Amurath.—Eugenius.—The League.—Ladislans.—John Huniades.—Battle of Warna.—Death of Ladislans.—Column erected to his memory by Amurath.—Cardinal Julian.—Seven Chiefs.—Scanderbeg.—Constantine.—Phranza.—Embassies.—Turkish War.—Mahomet the Second.—Siege of Constantinople.—Great Cannon.—Force of the Turks.—Force of the Greeks.—Succour from the Christian Princes.—Mahomet's Navy transported overland.—State of the City.—Mahomet's final orders.—Death of Constantine.—St. Sophia.—Transformed into a Mosch.—Palace of the Caesars.—Constantine's body found.—Loss of the

Morea.—Siege and Sack of Otranto.—Death of Mahomet.—Four principal Causes of the Ruin of Rome	688 to 735
Germany and the House of Austria.—Golden Bull of Charles the Fourth.—Power of the Crown.—Princes and Potentates.—Helvetic Confederacy.—Switzerland.—The Three Patriotic Nations.—Characteristics.—Duke Leopold's Invasion.—Morgarten.—Three Forest Cantons augmented to thirteen.—Second Duke Leopold.—Sempach.—Arnold.—Swiss Mercenaries.—Legislative System	736 to 755
The Reformation.—The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries.—General Situation of Europe.—The effect of the Fall of Constantinople on Western Europe.—The Revival of Learning.—Opposition to the Papacy.—Evils consequent on the Reformation.—Persecutions.—Capabilities of Europe for Controversy.—Beneficial Results.—Huss.—Ziska.—Calvin.—Francis the First.—Sir Thomas More.—Melancthon.—Edward the Sixth.—Cranmer.—Emperor Charles the Fifth.—Appeal to the Scriptures a result.—Progress of Science.—Wickliffe.—Knox.—Queen Elizabeth	756 to 784
Civil and Religious Wars of France.—Forty years' Tragedy.—Francis the First.—Family of the Guises.—Katharine de Medicis.—Prince of Condé.—Constable Montmorency.—Massacre of St. Bartholomew.—The League.—Duke of Guise.—Barricadoes in Paris.—Siege of the Louvre.—Swiss Guards.—State of Society	785 to 792
Henry the Fourth.—Difficulties on Accession.—Duke of Mayenne.—Duke of Parma.—Victory at Ivri.—State of Society during the Religious Wars.—States-General.—Henry's Government.—Spirit of the Nobility.—Edict of Nantz.—Privileges of Dissenters in France.—Maximilian de Bethune.—Henry's failings.—Assassination by Ravaillac	793 to 802
Philip the Second and his Dutch and Flemish subjects.—Cardinal Granville.—The Duke of Alva.—Council of Tumults.—The Duke of Feria.—Prince of Eboli.—Margaret of Parma.—Prince of Orange.—Protestant German Princes.—Conduct of the Flemings.—The Seven Provinces.—Requesens.—Peace of Passau.—Thirty years' War.—Austrian Princes.—Maximilian.—Rodolph.—Ferdinand the Second.—The Elector Palatine.—Gustavus Adolphus.—Battle of Lützen.—Bernard the Great.—Duke Ernest.—Louis the Thirteenth.—	

Treaty of Westphalia.—Walstein.—France and the House of Austria.....	803 to 830
Henry the Eighth.—Edward the Sixth.—Reign of Elizabeth.—Wentworth.—James the First.—Bacon.—“Apology of the House of Commons to the King touching their Privileges.”—Charles the First.—The Petition of Right.—Question of Tonnage and Poundage.—Ecclesiastical Law.—Law of Knighthood.—Forest Laws.—Irish Rebellion.—Civil War.—Victory of Naseby.—Prynne.—Cromwell.—Execution of Charles the First.—Richard Cromwell.—Character of the Old Cavaliers.—Difficulties of the Republican Party.—Restoration of Charles the Second.—The Healing Parliament.—Clarendon.—King's Standing Army.—The Regicides.—Charles and Louis the Fourteenth.—Shaftesbury.—Buckingham.—Sidney.—Russell.—Sir William Temple.—Andrew Marvel.—Character of the Duke of York.—Resistance to his Accession.—“The Seven Patriots.”—Whig Principles	831 to 857
East and West Indies.—Columbus.—Conquest of Mexico.—Cortez.—Prince Montezuma.—Bernal Diaz del Castillo.—Pizarro.—Conquest of Peru.—Las Casas, Bishop of Chiapa.—Vasco de Gama.—Albuquerque.—Cape of Good Hope.—Dutch Invasions.—Progress of Science	858 to 866.
Revolution of 1688.—William the Third.—State Factions.—William's Military Character.—Whigs and Tories.—Peace of Ryswick.—Regency of Mary.—Revolution of 1688 legalised by the Conventional Parliament.—Questions before the House in William's reign.—Characters of William and James.—Great War of the Spanish Succession.—Louis Fourteenth's Breach of Faith.—Queen Anne's Measures.—The Great Duke of Marlborough.—Protestant Succession.—Union of England and Scotland.—Violence of the Whigs.—Establishment of the House of Brunswick on the British Throne.—Classic Age.—Walpole, Pulteney, Shippen, Sir William Wyndham, Lord Hardwicke, Lord Carteret, Lord Chesterfield, Pitt.—Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.—Rebellion of 1745.—The Pretender in Scotland.—Duncan Forbes.—Robert Walpole.—Seven years' Tranquillity.—Commencement of the Great War	867 to 877
Frederic, King of Prussia.—Maria Theresa, Queen of Austria.—Silesia and the Seven years' War.—Hungarians.—General Kevenhuller.—The Partition of Poland	878 to 882

George the Third.—Causes of the American War.—Franklin.—Grenville.—Pitt.—Governor Pownall.—Colonel Barré.—Fox.—Lord North.—Power of Taxation.—Executive Government wanting.—Washington.—State of the Army.—Provincial Legislation.—Limited Authority of Congress.—Federal Government of 1789.—Washington elected President.—General Feeling in America towards Great Britain and France.—Colonel Hamilton and Mr. Secretary Jefferson.—Merits of Washington.—New York.—Henry Hudson.—Island of Manhattan.—Grant to the Duke of York.—Declaration of Independence.—Battle of Long Island.—Final Evacuation of the British.—First Amerian Congress.—New York Harbour.—Battery.—Camauché Indians.—Sauks and Foxes.—Sioux and Ioway Tribes.—Lost Tribes of Israel.—Major Noah.—Benjamin of Tudela.—Alvarez.—Traces of Jewish Ancestry.—Hebrew Words and Customs.—Indian Festivals.—Manasseh ben Israel.—William Penn.—Emanuel de Merazy.—Monsieur de Quiques.—Beltrami.—The Earl of Crawford and Lindsey.—Indians of Mexico and Peru.—Montesini.—Acosta.—Escobartus.—The Cholula.—Quetzacolt.—Malvenda.—Montezuma.—Inca Yupanque.—Clavagero and De Vega.—The Great Temple.—Lord Kingsborough.—Natchez Tribe.—Du Pratz.—Mr. Catlin.—Museum of Indian Curiosities.—Mr. Buckingham.—Speculation in the United States.—Importation of Corn.—“The District of Columbia.”—City of Washington.—The Capitol.—Observations of an Indian Chief.—Pocahontas and Captain Smith.—Sculptures of Signor Capellano, of Causici, of Gevelot.—Colonel Trumbull's Historical Paintings.—The Senate Chamber.—Rotunda.—Hall of Representatives.—Library.—Order of Proceedings in the House of Assembly.—The President's House.—Washington's First Commission.—The Arsenal.—General Post-office.—Gilbert Stuart.—Baltimore, “The Monumental City.”—“Washington Monument.”—“The Battle Monument.”—“The Statue of the City.”—The Armistead Monument.—Springs and Fountains.—Pennsylvania.—Philadelphia.—Parentage and Education of Penn.—Conquest of Jamaica by Admiral Penn

883 to 949

Louis the Sixteenth.—Marie Antoinette.—Bastile destroyed.—Execution of Louis.—France declared a Republic.—Religion formally abolished.—Peace with Spain and Prussia.—Austrians in Italy.—Mantua taken.—Loretto pillaged.—Peace between France and Germany.—Venice.—Treaty of

Campo Formio.—Genoa conquered.—Rome declared a republic, and the Pope sent prisoner to France.—Switzerland.—Battle of the Pyramids.—Egypt.—Sir Ralph Abercrombie.—Invasion of Italy.—Treaty of Luneville.—Spain and Portugal.—Toussaint and St. Domingo.—Peace of Amiens.—War between England and France.—Buonaparte declared Emperor.—Treaty of Austerlitz.—War between Prussia and France.—Treaty of Tilsit.—Emigration of the Portuguese Royal Family to the Brazils.—Bernadotte declared Crown Prince of Sweden.—Buonaparte's Russian Expedition.—Alliance of England, Russia, Prussia, Austria, and Sweden against France.—Buonaparte sent to Elba.—Escape.—Battle of Quatre Bras.—Battle of Waterloo.—Disbanding of the French Army.—Death of Buonaparte.—Death of Louis the Eighteenth.—Charles the Tenth.—Death of Alexander, Emperor of all the Russias.—Portugal.—Greece.—Algiers.—Louis Philippe.—Holland and Belgium.—Siege of Antwerp 950 to 983

Egypt.—Mohammed Ali Pacha.—Extinction of the Mamelukes.—Ibrahim.—Bedouins.—Hassan Bey.—Siege of Missilonghi.—Marco Bozzaris.—Pyramid of Skulls.—Sultan Mahmoud.—Slaughter of the Janizaries.—Emperor Nicholas.—Title of Czar.—Russian Serfs.—Devotion to the Emperor.—Government of Russia.—Russian Army.—The Kirquish.—The burning of Moscow.—Napoleon in Moscow.—Polish Revolution.—Fall of Poland.—Treachery of the Governor of Warsaw.—Government of China.—Titles of the Emperor.—The Nuy-kō.—The Keun-ke-ta-chin.—The Luh-poo.—The Lefäu-yuen.—The Too-cha-yuen. The "Army of Heaven."—Causes of the War with Afghanistan.—Shah Shooja-ool-Moolk.—Ameer Dost Mahomed.—Nadir Shah V.—Ahmed Shah proclaimed King by the title of Doora Dooranee.—Timour Shah.—Shah Zimaun.—Mahmood.—Futti Khan.—Shah Shooja defeated between Peshawur and Cabul and at Candahar.—His flight to the Punjab.—Runjeet Singh.—Negociations of the British for opening the navigation of the Indus.—Intrigues of Persia and Russia.—Siege of Herat.—Measures of the British Government for the security of the Frontier.—Success of the British Arms 984 to 1000.

SECTION I.

BARBARIANS AND ROMANS.

1. WHEN do the northern nations first claim our attention?

About the middle of the third century, under the reign of Valerian and Gallienus, they began everywhere to press forward, and were seen fairly struggling with the Romans for the empire of Europe. They had destroyed five consular armies—encountered Marius—contended with Julius Cæsar—annihilated Varus and his three legions, and given the title of Germanicus to the first Roman of his age. In the time of Marcus Antoninus they formed a general union, and were not subdued till after a long and doubtful conflict.

2. Can original connexions be traced between the Goths and Greeks?

Thucydides says, that the distinction between Greeks and barbarians was not in being until after Homer's time; that in the more remote ages, the inhabitants of the country from the most southern parts of the Peloponnesus to the sides of the Euxine, were one people, known by various names, but resembling each other in manners and customs, having mutual intercourse, and understanding the same languages. One of their general and most ancient names was Pelasgi. At first they had no fixed habitations, but roved about in clans,

as the Tartars do at present; some of them, who had juster notions of society, by degrees formed settled governments. Colonies from Egypt, Phœnicia, and Phrygia, made considerable improvements in several parts of the country, and introduced letters, laws, and new forms of religion among the people: the states and districts which more uniformly adopted these improvements made greater advances in politeness, and were distinguished by the name of Hellenes or Achaians, whilst their less civilised neighbours were called Thracians. By this means the southern limits of Thrace differed considerably at different times. At first it extended so far as Attica; afterwards it was bounded by the river Peneus; then by the Strymon, and lastly by the Nessus.

Thrace in the later ages was distributed into small districts. Pliny tells us that in the Roman times, there were no less than fifty military prefectures or provinces. This division may have some connexion with its ancient state; for he observes, that, had the Thracians agreed to live under one government, and unite in one common interest, they would have been the most powerful as well as the most populous nation in the world. This was the "Great Eastern Hive," from whence issued all the numerous Teutonic branches. The Getæ were originally Thracians; and the Getæ, Gothi, Daci, were but different names for the same people. The Goths and Germans were undoubtedly sister nations—branches of a common stock. Colonies of the Getæ, long before Strabo's time, were spread over Germany, and extended from the Euxine so far as the banks of the Rhine. The great affinity between the Greek and Gothic languages, is an evidence of their common origin; and the Saxons, though at first without letters, preserved in all their separate divisions dark traditions of this descent.

The northern limits of Old Thrace extended as far as the Danube; and the southern, Thucydides informs us, to the gulf of Corinth. In the dispute between Eumol-

pus the Thracian, and Erechtheus, king of Athens, the former laid claim to Athens itself, as part of his father's dominions. The capitals of these two princes were not above fifteen miles distant from each other, their situation and the manners of their inhabitants being similar. The war was amicably concluded. The terms were, that, for the future, the inhabitants of Athens and Eleusis should be considered one people; that the religion of Eleusis, the mysteries known and revered under that name, should be received at Athens; that the descendants of Eumolpus should be entitled to the priesthood, the family of Erechtheus to the crown.

Nor was this agreement and uniformity peculiar to the worship of Ceres; that of Bacchus was the same. The orgia, even in their highest celebration, the Triete-rica, the most distinguished of all the Bacchanalian festivals, were common to both people, and were introduced by Thracians, instituted by Tharops, grandfather of Orpheus, by whom they were, with some improvements, communicated to the Greeks. Bacchus himself insisted upon their reception at Thebes. Euripides and Strabo take it for granted that these mysteries came from Phrygia originally, and so over the Hellespont into Thrace. Greece was in after ages famous for its great variety of religions; almost every state had a system of its own; but their most ancient solemnities, the festivals of Ceres and Bacchus, their rejoicings for the ingatherings of the harvest and vintage, were observed universally and in the same manner, both by Thracians and Greeks. These were part of the common ritual, before the inhabitants were formed into separate states or distinguished as a different people. And Dionysius Halicarnassensis considers this, agreement in their religious rites to be one of the most evident proofs of a common origin.

The first Greek poets, we learn from Strabo and Laertius, were Thracians; and all those celebrated groves,

mountains, and rivers, supposed to be the resort of the Muses, were the beautiful sequestered scenes which had been the delight and retirement of the Thracian poets, Orpheus, Linus, Thamyris and Musæus. Orpheus was the father of the European poetry, and we gather from the ancients that he wrote in Greek the common language. Linus is ranked among those who had the reputation of introducing the Greek characters, having, according to Tacitus, promoted their reception. Their alphabet had on this account different appellations. Phœnician, from the country whence the letters were derived; Pelasgic, from the people who received them. Dionysius and Diodorus were of opinion that the Latin, Greek, Pelasgic, and Phœnician letters were originally the same.

3. From what original are all the languages in the northern parts of Europe manifestly descended?

When Ovid was at Tomi, A.D. 11, there were only two languages, excepting Greek, spoken on the western side of the Euxine, which he calls the Getic and Sarmatic. They have had for several ages the appellation of the Gothic and Sclavonian, because the Sclavi, in the fourth century, came into Europe from the same quarter, and founded colonies, as the Sarmatae or Sauromatæ had done previously. Bishop Nicholson observes, that from this original all the languages of the northern European nations are descended. From the Getic or Gothic, the Teutonic in all its branches is derived, namely, the Dutch, English, Danish, Swedish, Norwegian and Icelandic tongues. From the Sclavonian, the Polish, Prussian, Muscovitish, Bohemian, and Transylvanian. The history of the people supports this sentiment—long distinguished by languages of a different cast, the first came from Asia, across the Hellespont, their language resembling the Greek and Thracian. The others travelled over the Tanaïs round the Euxine.

The first account of the Sarmatæ is given by Herodotus, who places them between mount Caucasus and the Tanaïs. Diodorus Siculus, speaking of the several clans of the Scythians, says, that one came out of Media, and settled on the banks of the Tanaïs, known by the name of Sauromatæ. The ancient accounts of the situation of these people, and the modern observations on their language, unite in establishing their original descent. The names of the Asiatic clans are not generally so well known as those of the Goths. The principal were, Abari, Alani, Antæ, Borussi, Bulgari, Croatii, Heniochi, Hungari, Hunni, Moschi, Poloni, Sarmatæ, Sclavoni, Sclavi, Servii, Veneti, &c.

4. What people cultivated commerce with the Goths?

The Greeks. The first great voyage was that of Jason and his Argonauts; but probably this was not the first expedition of Thessalians to the Euxine, for great armaments and preparations are never made till the place they are destined to, is discovered. The Argonautic expedition was piratical, but the pirates of those ages were princes, and it was not considered despicable to engage in such exploits. Self-interest and a regard to safety discouraged these wild excursions, but they introduced a trade which was carried on to the mutual advantage of both parties, by equitable methods and established rules. The Milesians, a colony of Athenians, were the first who made progress in the Euxine trade. They built numerous cities round the coast, and colonised there. Other states of Greece followed their example. This gave it, according to Strabo, the name of the Euxine, or Hospitable sea.

5. Was this trade advantageous to the Greeks?

The Euxine was the magazine of Athens; it not only enriched, but supported its inhabitants. Their influence,

as the principal maritime power of Greece, was chiefly owing to intercourse with this country. Their exports were skins, leather, honey, wax, salt-fish, caviare, anchovies, and slaves in great numbers, and the best adapted to service in the world. The Athenians found here timber and naval stores, with abundance of corn for their numerous artificers.

Attica was famous for its iron works: these furnished staple commodities for the Euxine, arms being in request with the northern nations. And as the politeness of the Athenian taste extended to these distant settlements, books became considerable exports. The Athenians were sensible of the great advantages of this trade. Those princes whose territories commanded the entrance of the Bosphorus, received the highest privileges they could confer; several kings and princes of Thrace, and some of their generals and prime ministers, were made citizens of Athens. This was considered one of the most distinguished honours. Leuco, king of Thrace, on receiving citizenship, ordered the decree to be engraved on three marble columns; one of them he placed in the Piræus, another on the side of the Bosphorus, and the third in the temple of Jupiter Urius. This temple was ornamented and venerated by the voyagers, and most probably owed its existence to the Euxine trade. The design of it was for the worship of Jupiter, to implore a prosperous voyage, the sea being subject to sudden squalls of wind.

6. How far did the dominion of the Thracian kings extend?

At one time the kings of Thrace had command of the whole western coast of the Euxine, from the Hellespont to Taurica Chersonesus; for in the immunities granted by Leuco to the Athenians, Theodosia, the most important port in the Crim, was particularly included. The corn

imported yearly from that country to Athens only, was about 400,000 mediumi of wheat, besides barley, &c.

Xerxes, whose actions were usually dictated by vanity, refused to take the Grecian corn ships returning from the Euxine; saying, that as they were sailing to Greece, it would save his admirals the trouble of taking them: he should find their cargoes upon the spot, ready to furnish his magazines; but Hestiaeus, his father's admiral, by birth a Milesian, understood the importance of such captures, and the proper place to intercept the vessels. He stationed his fleet at the mouth of the Bosphorus, and took them all. Pollis the Spartan admiral had the same sentiments. He knew that there was not a more effectual method of distressing the Athenians than the seizure of their corn fleet, and attempted it, though without success, at the hazard of a battle.

Leuco granted the Athenians the privilege of loading first, in all his ports, and exporting wheat without paying any duty. They had made him a citizen of Athens, and in return he conferred the citizenship of Thrace upon almost the whole nation: perhaps there was more politeness than policy in this conduct. But the Athenians had so much address, that they seldom paid compliments to sovereign princes without taking advantages in return. The immunity in exporting corn was no mean privilege. The kings of Thrace had a considerable revenue from the customs; Demosthenes tells us, 2000 talents per annum, or £38,762 sterling: this must have enabled these princes to make a considerable figure in Europe. The duty upon goods exported was a thirtieth part of their value, or almost three and a half per cent.

7. Name the first instance of the public erecting a statue to a son, when they had already paid the same compliment to his father.

The Paphlagonians, on the south of the Euxine, having offended the Athenians, Timotheus, the son of

the famous Conon, was sent to chastise them. He brought away £240,000 treasure. The public reaped the benefit of the conquest, but Timotheus had the honour of a statue in the Forum.

8. What does Pliny say of the commerce on the Euxine?

The trade of the Euxine passed with the liberties of Greece into the hands of the Romans. Though a considerable part was removed to Alexandria and the Nile, yet even then the accounts of the commerce carried on are extraordinary. Pliny says that the concourse of traders was so great, that the mercantile affairs in the Euxine were conducted by one hundred and fifty interpreters.

9. Had the term barbarian originally reference to savage character or manners?

The inhabitants from the north of Thessaly to the south of the Peloponnesus, being by intercourse with other nations more civilised than their northern neighbours, were distinguished by the general and popular name of Hellenes. Whether this arose from an imaginary persuasion that they were descended from Hellen, or from these governments having formed the great alliance against Troy, they afterwards considered themselves as originally one people, and treated the less civilised nations, though they spoke the same language, as barbarians. The word, according to Euripides, carried no reproach, but related to their descent. Hector calls Rhesus and himself barbarians, without intending the least reflection upon that prince's character or his own. Philip, a more accomplished and considerable prince than Rhesus, is called by Demosthenes a barbarian. Aristotle was born out of the pale of pure Hellenism, yet he spoke Greek politely. In after ages the term barbarian included savage character and customs.

10. Whence is the appellation Saxon derived?

Julius Cæsar is the first writer who mentions the Germans, and Ptolemy the Saxons. Both the words, though possibly not originally of the same derivation, express Warriors or Swordsmen, and arose from national character. It is not certain whether the name Seaxena or Saxons implied the military or religious use of the sword. Herodotus asserts that one clan of the Scythians worshipped Mars under the symbol of a sword; they erected every year a huge pile of faggots; one of the sides was sloping, and the other perpendicular; at the top of this pile they placed an old iron scymitar, or sword, as the image of their god.

11. Were the Teutones and Celts distinct nations?

Almost all the ancient writers speak of them as different; and the Scythians, under which name the Germanic nations were included, inhabited the northern part of Europe; the Celts the western. Cæsar and Tacitus considered the Celts originally Tyrian or Phœnician colonies.

12. Had the Saxons family names?

The Saxons had not names like the Romans, consisting of several words, but usually one compound proper name like the Greeks; as *Albert*, all illustrious; *Ecqberty*, eminent for equity; *Herebert*, for war; *Cuthred*, celebrated for counsel; *Sigehelm*, a victorious defender; *Wilehelm*, a defender of the many, or of the people; *Godwin*, beloved of God; *Sigebard*, a bold conqueror, &c.; just as *Pericles*, *Themistocles*, and *Demosthenes*, &c., have the same meanings in Greek.

13. Does Cæsar mention the unsettled nature of the barbarians and their frequent migrations?

He speaks of them as a fierce and restless people, unskilled in agriculture; they considered their territory

inadequate to their numbers, and unworthy of their renown, though its extent was such that the population could scarcely have been nine to a square mile. Their fighting men numbered ninety-two thousand, and with this force they were ready to undertake the most hazardous expeditions. A specimen of the calamities by which these migrations were attended, is recorded in one of their conflicts with Cæsar, when nearly a fourth of the whole nation perished, that is, three thousand people.

14. What were the characters of the barbarians and Romans at this extraordinary crisis?

The different barbaric tribes assuming the name of Alemanni, or All-men, to denote at once their various lineage and common bravery, fought chiefly on horseback; but their cavalry was rendered still more formidable, by a mixture of light infantry, selected from the bravest and most active of the youth, whom frequent exercise had inured to accompany the horsemen in the longest march, the most rapid charge, or the most precipitate retreat. The skill and discipline of the Romans were superior; but excepting when alarmed into prompt measures, they disgracefully preferred exemption from military service, and indulged in effeminate and luxurious pleasures.

15. For what purpose was the great Gothic fleet prepared?

The formidable nations who fought under the Gothic standard constructed a fleet of six thousand vessels on the banks of the Niester, a number sufficient to transport their pretended army of three hundred and twenty thousand—but the success of the expedition was not equal to the vast preparation. After a disastrous voyage and many unsuccessful descents on the coasts of Europe and Asia, a spirit of discouragement and division arose

in the fleet, and some of the chiefs sailed away towards the islands of Crete and Cyprus. But the main body, pursuing a more steady course, anchored at the foot of mount Athos, and assaulted Thessalonica, the wealthy capital of Macedonia. Their attacks were interrupted by the rapid approach of Claudius, hastening to a scene of action that deserved the presence of a warlike prince at the head of the remaining powers of the empire.

Were the Goths eager for the contest?

Impatient for battle, the Goths immediately broke up their camp—relinquished the siege of Thessalonica—left their navy at the foot of mount Athos—traversed the hills of Macedonia, and pressed forward to engage the Last Defence of Italy.

17. How did Claudius act on this memorable occasion?

In his letter to the senate we may trace a melancholy firmness, which announces him a hero careless of his fate, conscious of his danger, but still deriving a well-grounded hope from the resources of his own mind. “Conscript fathers,” says the emperor, “know that three hundred and twenty thousand Goths have invaded the Roman territory. If I vanquish them, your gratitude will reward my services; should I fall, remember that I am the successor of Gallienus. The whole republic is fatigued and exhausted. We shall fight after Valerian, after Ingenuus, Regillianus, Lollianus, Posthumous, Celsus, and a thousand others, whom a just contempt for Gallienus provoked into rebellion. We are in want of darts, of spears, and of shields. The strength of the empire, Gaul and Spain, are usurped by Tetricus, and we blush to acknowledge that the archers of the East serve under the banners of Zenobia. Whatever we shall perform will be sufficiently great.”

18. Did Claudius gain a victory over the Goths ?

The event surpassed his own expectations, and those of the world ; by the most signal victories he delivered the empire from this host of barbarians ; and was distinguished by posterity under the glorious appellation of the Gothic Claudius.

19. When did the Alemanni invade Italy ?

In the reign of Aurelian, the successor of Claudius. The barbarians finding it impossible to traverse the Danube and the Roman camp, broke through the posts in their rear, which were more feebly and less carefully guarded ; and with incredible diligence, but by a different road, returned towards the mountains of Italy ; and Aurelian, who considered the war as totally extinguished, received the mortifying intelligence of the escape of the Alemanni, and of the ravage which was already committed in the territory of Milan. The legions were commanded to follow, and the emperor himself marched to the relief of Italy at the head of a chosen body, composed of the hostages and cavalry of the Vandals, and all the prætorian guards who had served in the wars of the Danube.

20. What was the result of this desultory war ?

The success was various. Three considerable battles are mentioned.

21. Where was the first fought ?

Near Placentia ; the Romans received so severe a blow, that the immediate dissolution of the empire was apprehended ; the crafty barbarians lined the woods, and attacked the legion in the dusk of evening, when resting after the fatigues of a long march. The fury of their charge was irresistible ; but at length, after dreadful slaughter, the patient firmness of the emperor rallied his troops, and restored, in some degree, the honour of his arms.

22. Where was the second battle ?

At Fano, in Umbria, on the spot which, five hundred years before, had been fatal to the brother of Hannibal. Thus far the successful Germans had advanced along the Æmilian and Flaminian way, with a design of sacking the defenceless “Mistress of the World;” but Aurelian, who, watchful for the safety of Rome, still hung on their rear, found in this place the decisive moment for giving them a total and irretrievable defeat. The flying remnant of their host was exterminated in a third and last battle near Pavia, and Italy was delivered from the inroads of the Alemanni.

23. What was Aurelian’s next act ?

The arms of Rome being restored to their ancient superiority over the barbarous nations of the north, Aurelian resolved to chastise domestic tyrants, and to reunite the dismembered parts of the empire. Though he was acknowledged by the senate and people, the frontiers of Italy, Africa, Illyricum, and Thrace confined the limits of his reign. Gaul, Spain and Britain, Egypt, Syria, and Asia Minor, were still possessed by two rebels, who alone, out of a numerous list, had hitherto escaped the dangers of their situation; and to complete the ignominy of Rome, these rival thrones had been usurped by women.

24. Who reigned in Gaul ?

Victoria, having by her arts and treasures succeeded in successively placing Marius and Tetricus on the throne, reigned with a manly vigour under the name of those dependant emperors.

25. Who was Tetricus ?

When, at the instigation of his ambitious patroness, he assumed the insignia of royalty, he was governor of the peaceful province of Aquitaine, an employment suited to his character and education. He reigned

four or five years over Gaul, Spain, and Britain, the slave and sovereign of his army, whom he dreaded, and by whom he was despised.

26. Did he seek to throw off his thraldom ?

The valour and fortune of Aurelian at length opened the prospect of deliverance. He ventured to disclose his melancholy situation, and conjured the emperor to hasten to the relief of his unhappy rival.

27. What was the result of this appeal ?

Had this secret correspondence reached the ears of the soldiers, it would most probably have cost Tetricus his life ; nor could he resign the sceptre of the West without pretending a civil war, leading his forces into the power of Aurelian, under the mask of opposing him. The rebel legions, disordered and dismayed by the treachery of their chief, defended themselves with desperate valour, until they were cut in pieces almost to a man. This bloody and memorable battle was fought near Chalons, in Champagne. The Franks and Batavians were compelled or persuaded to retreat beyond the Rhine, and the power of Aurelian was acknowledged from the wall of Antoninus to the columns of Hercules.

28. Name the second power that defied the Roman sway ?

Palmyra and the East, in the person of their sovereign, Zenobia. Modern Europe has produced several illustrious women, who have sustained with glory the weight of empire ; nor is our own age destitute of such distinguished characters. But, if we except the doubtful achievements of Semiramis, Zenobia is perhaps the only woman whose superior genius broke through the servile indolence imposed on her sex by the climate and manners of Asia.

29. From whom did she claim descent ?

From the Macedonian kings of Egypt ; she equalled in beauty her ancestor Cleopatra, and far surpassed her in virtuous principles and valour.

30. Was she beautiful and accomplished ?

Zenobia was esteemed the most lovely as well as the most heroic of her sex. She was of a dark complexion ; her teeth were of a pearly whiteness, and her large black eyes sparkled with uncommon fire, tempered by the most attractive sweetness. Her voice was strong and harmonious. Her manly understanding was strengthened and adorned by study. She was not ignorant of the Latin tongue, but possessed in equal perfection the Greek, the Syriac, and the Egyptian languages. She had drawn up for her own use an epitome of oriental history, and familiarly compared the beauties of Homer and Plato, under the tuition of the sublime Longinus.

31. Who shared her throne ?

Odenathus, who from a private station raised himself to the dominion of the East. She soon became the friend and companion of a hero. Odenathus, in the intervals of war, passionately delighted in hunting, and Zenobia's ardour in that dangerous amusement was not inferior to his own. She had inured her constitution to fatigue, disdained the use of a covered carriage, generally appeared on horseback in a military habit, and sometimes marched several miles on foot at the head of the troops.

32. May the successes of Odenathus, in a great measure, be ascribed to her incomparable prudence and fortitude ?

Yes, especially their splendid victories over the Great King, whom they twice pursued to the gates of

Ctesiphon, which laid the foundations of their united fame and power.

33. What caused the death of Odenathus?

After a successful expedition against the Gothic plunderers of Asia, the Palmyrenian prince returned to the city of Emesa in Syria, where the conqueror, invincible in war, was cut off by domestic treason, being assassinated by his nephew, Mæonius, whom he had punished for insolence.

34. Did Mæonius gain any advantage by this act?

Only the pleasure of revenge for the moment. He had scarcely time to assume the title of Augustus, before he was sacrificed by Zenobia to the memory of her husband.

35. Who filled the vacant throne?

Zenobia, who governed with manly counsels Palmyra, Syria, and the East, above five years.

36. What characterised her reign?

Courage and prudence. By the death of Odenathus, that authority was at an end which the senate had granted him only as a personal distinction: but his martial widow, disdaining both the senate and Gallienus, obliged one of the Roman generals, who was sent against her, to retreat into Europe with the loss of his army and reputation. Her steady administration was guided by the most judicious maxims of policy. If it were expedient to pardon, she could calm her resentment; if it were necessary to punish, she could impose silence on the voice of pity. Her strict economy was accused of avarice; yet on every proper occasion she appeared magnificent and liberal.

37. How was she regarded by the other powers?

The neighbouring states of Arabia, Armenia, and Persia dreaded her enmity, and solicited her alliance. To the dominions of Odenathus, which extended from the Euphrates to the frontiers of Bithynia, his widow added the inheritance of her ancestor, the populous and fertile kingdom of Egypt. The emperor Claudius acknowledged her merit, and was content that, while he pursued the Gothic war, she should assert the dignity of the empire in the East.

38. Did the emperor Aurelian defeat the Palmyrian queen?

Yes; the fate of the East was decided by two great battles; and the siege of the city of Palmyra, the skill and valour of Zenobia and her general, Zabdus, are described by Aurelian in an original letter: "The Roman people," says the emperor, "speak with contempt of the war which I am waging against a woman. They are ignorant both of the character and of the power of Zenobia. It is impossible to enumerate her warlike preparations of stones, of arrows, and of every species of missile weapons. Every part of the walls is provided with two or three *balistæ*, and artificial fires are thrown from her military engines. The fear of punishment has armed her with a desperate courage. Yet still I trust in the protecting deities of Rome, who have hitherto been favourable to all my undertakings."

39. What was the conduct of Zenobia when, after her defeat, she was brought into the presence of Aurelian?

He sternly asked the Syrian queen how she had presumed to rise in arms against the emperors of Rome? The answer of Zenobia was a prudent mixture of respect and firmness. "Because I disdained to consider as Roman emperors an Aureolus or a Gallienus. You alone, I acknowledge as my conqueror and my sovereign."

40. Was the military character desperate at this period?

We may gather some idea of the daring spirit of the contending parties from Cæsar's Commentaries, in which he gives the reply of the bold barbarian Ariovistus. "Fight us, if you please; you will learn to know us: we are a nation that has been under no roof within the last fourteen years." In speaking of the Nervii he tells us, they threw their darts from the dead bodies of their countrymen as from an eminence, and seized and returned the pila which had been hurled at them by the Romans. Then follows a description of one of the most tremendous conflicts in the course of his campaigns in Gaul. Of six hundred of their senators, three only remained; and of sixty thousand fighting men, scarcely five hundred.

41. Describe the state of society at this period amongst the Gauls and Germans?

Cæsar, in his sixth book, mentions the superstitions of the Gauls; their Druids settled the temporal disputes of the community, gave instructions in astronomy, and in the doctrine of immortality. The Germans had no priests; they approached to the state of a pastoral nation, placed their glory in having a solitude of terror around their borders; had, in peace, no magistrates but their chieftains; created dictators in war; and every means was adopted to make the nation hardy and content, by constantly exposing them to the inclemencies of a German climate, and by banishing the distinctions of property and wealth.

42. Did the Gauls adopt the Roman customs?

They courteously copied their rapacious governors either from a national or natural complaisance, or with political views. In imitation of the Romans they weighed their year, and because it had twelve months,

and twelve hours were reckoned one day, they considered it so many pounds.

43. Name the emperor who first furnished annual subsidies to the German princes?

Domitian, who had the vanity to triumph over the Germans, whom he had never seen, and over the Dacians, who had reduced him to the necessity of purchasing a peace: he was obliged to retain the Germans as allies, to keep the frontiers of the empire in peace and tranquillity; and the northern princes were wise enough to insist upon a continuance of this source of revenue. Tacitus observes, that they were as good judges of the value of Roman money as the Romans themselves; they preferred the consular to the imperial coins, as having more weight and less alloy.

44. What were the natural and acquired advantages and disadvantages of each of the two great contending powers—the barbarian and the Roman?

When we consider the hardness and fierce courage of the barbarians, it seems impossible that they should be resisted by any other human beings; and yet still more impossible to suppose that the Roman legions can be overcome, so eminent for skill, for courage, and for discipline; the long result of many ages of experience and victory: arms, science and union are on one side, savage nature and freedom on the other. The ultimate success, however, of the barbarians could not well be doubted; every change, it was clear, would be in their favour; it was the contest of youth against age, of hope against fear. In the civilised state, the government had degenerated into a military despotism; the vital principle was in decay; the freedom, the genius of Rome was gone for ever. Discipline, it was evident, would in the barbarians continually improve—among the Romans gradually disappear. The jealousies and

dissensions of the barbarians, on the one side, might delay the event ; as might, on the other, great ability and virtue in the Roman emperors. But a succession of such merit could not be expected. Under a government of anarchy and licentiousness, the character of the Roman people and of the Roman army would eventually sink and perish : and a few barbarian chieftains arising at different periods, of sufficient ability to combine and direct the energies of their countrymen, would, it was evident, at first shake and at length overwhelm the licentious affluence, the relaxed discipline, the broken, the wasted, the distracted powers of the empire of Rome.

45. What powerful and savage people appeared in Europe at this remarkable epoch ?

The nation of the Huns suddenly appeared, savages still more odious and terrific than had before been experienced. From the north of China they had passed, or retreated, to the confines of the Volga, from thence to the Tanaïs, and after they had defeated the Alani, they pressed onwards to the conquest of Europe.

46. On whom did they first descend ?

On the Goths, who considered them as the offspring of witches and infernal spirits in the deserts of Scythia ; an opinion that forcibly expressed how unsightly was their appearance, and how tremendous their hostility.

47. What was the result of this invasion ?

This dreadful visitation of the Huns did not, after all, destroy the Roman empire, or leave that impression on the face of Europe which might have been expected. When the fierce Attila was no more, the force of his nation gradually decayed.

48. What may this whole irruption of the Huns be considered ?

Chiefly as a sort of temporary interruption to the great contest between the northern nations and Rome, concluded by the retreat of Attila from Gaul, which in the progress of his conquests he had attacked.

49. As the northern nations became every where triumphant, where did the distinct divisions take their stations ?

The Franks in Gaul, the Visigoths in Spain, the Burgundians on the Rhone, the Ostro-Goths in Italy ; and the Western empire sank under the great leader of his nation, Odoacer, who was himself subdued by the renowned Theodoric.

50. What was to be the result of this tremendous collision between the civilised and uncivilised portions of mankind, and the ultimate triumph of the barbarians ?

The civilised world was no longer respected. Its manners were corrupted, its literature had declined, its religion was lost in controversy, or debased by superstition. The vice and decrepitude of the Romans bowed before the influx of free-born warriors fresh from the hand of nature ; their erect aspect, firm step, and manly character, contrasting with the silent genius, enslaved liberty, and lost morality of their more tutored rivals.

51. Was the independent ferocity of the barbarians softened by the shadowed Christianity or courtly jurisprudence of the Romans ?—or was the degeneracy of the Romans elevated by the bold and native virtues of the barbarians ?

An enlightened philosopher at that critical period might have anticipated with benevolence and hope that the wrecks of literature and the arts that survived the storm, would strike the attention of the rude con-

querors, and be sufficient to enrich their minds with the seeds of future improvement, and the world in unity and freedom, begin anew a race of happiness and glory under the beneficial curb of Roman law, and the milder influences of Christianity.

S E C T I O N I I.

THE DARK AGES.

52. **W**HAT were the fortunes of the human race?—what impression, what direction, did the happiness of mankind receive?

The dark ages were the more immediate result of this memorable crisis of the western world.

53. **W**hat did their subsequent history present?

A drama exhibiting the conflicting reason and passions of mankind. The licentious warrior, the gloomy monk, the military prophet, the priestly despot, the shuddering devotee, the iron baron, the ready vassal, the courteous knight, the princely merchant, the fearless navigator, the patient scholar, the munificent patron, the bold reformer, the relentless bigot, the consuming martyr, the poet, the artist, and the philosopher, the legislator, the statesman, and the sage,—all that were by their united virtues and labours to assist the progress of the human race,—all that were at last to advance society to the state, which, during the greater part of the last century, it so happily had reached, the state of balanced power, of diffused humanity and knowledge, of political dignity, of private and public happiness.

54. **I**s the study of this particular part of modern history difficult and tedious?

The antiquarian nature of the research is repulsive, and the events and characters pass in a shadowy and rapid succession. Yet the history of the dark ages is authentic and valuable; and a knowledge of barbarous times, and our barbarous ancestry, is necessary to trace the formation of European character and the elements of European government.

55. Which are the first objects that present themselves to your diligent consideration of the personal character of the individual of Europe, and the general character of the constitution under which he lives?

That the European character is not the Asiatic character, nor the native American character, but one singularly composed, and one that has been able to subjugate every other in the world. Nor is the European form of government like the Asiatic, nor is that of England like that of France, nor either like that of Germany: and it is these differences of their origin—these differences when traced and understood, that will constitute your entertainment, and reward your inquiries.

56. Mention another and more immediate result of the collision between the civilised and uncivilised world?

The laws of the barbarians.

57. By whom were the laws made?

The most striking of the barbaric codes is that called the Salique, drawn up at an early period by "four chiefs of four villages," and declared to be "renowned," "founded by the Deity," "profound in counsel," and, characteristic of the spirit of the times, said to be "*entirely free from heresy.*"

58. Who improved or added to this law?

Clovis, Childebert, and Clothaire.

59. On what did the authority of the law rest ?

On the nation and its rulers, mutually co-operating for the common good, the whole breathing a bold spirit of national liberty. The legislature seems, afterwards, to have been the monarchs and their free assemblies.

60. What were their criminal punishments ?

Homicide was not capital ; a striking fact to begin with, indicating a very different state of society from our own. A penalty was enacted and tripled in case of concealment.

61. What is the natural conclusion on reading these laws ?

That each individual of the nation was still an independent being, who would not suffer his life to be affected by any crime which he committed ; who would not submit to restraint ; who neither saw, nor would have regarded the benefit that is derived to all, by the submission of each man to rules calculated to maintain the security of life, and to protect the weak. And this single feature gives, at once, an idea of the bold character of our early ancestors, of the fierceness of these independent warriors.

62. Why may we conclude the intercourse of mankind was very simple ?

Because the distinctions of crimes were every where observed, and particular thefts are mentioned by name, and punished by fines, there being no general descriptions.

63. Give an example of punishment for theft.

To steal from a cottage, to the value of a denarius, was punished by a fine of fifteen solidi ; and thirty, if the cottage was broken open.

64. What were the laws with respect to the recovery of debts?

In the provisions concerning debts and breach of covenant, fine was still in the first place the punishment; and in the fifty-second title, a process is pointed out for the forcible recovery of what is due; it is in the last result to be levied and distrained by public officers. There is no mention of imprisonment at the mercy and call of the creditor, the indolent resource of more civilised nations.

65. What are the laws respecting the transmission of property?

The power of bequeathing it by testament seems not to have been thought of. The law says, concerning the allodial land, that the children of the deceased were to succeed, next the father and mother, next the brothers and sisters, lastly the sisters of the father,—the aunts. Then follows the famous restriction of the sal, or home-stead, and the land immediately around it, to the male.

66. What inference may we draw?

That the institution of property in land was now established, though not in the time of Tacitus; an important step in the civilization of mankind. But there seems nothing said of a power to bequeath it by testament at the will of the possessor.

67. Was he who accused another of cowardice punished?

By being fined three solidi.

68. What were the laws with respect to the liberty of the subject; the laws of treason, for instance?

Of treason or offences against the state, there seems no notice taken. Every duty of the sort was compre-

hended in the general duty of resisting or opposing the enemies of the state by personal service.

69. What is meant by civil liberty ?

The modification of natural liberty, and the relative duties and apprehensions of the ruler and the subject. These seem scarcely to have appeared in a society like that of the early Franks.

70. How was the administration of these laws conducted ?

In the Salique and other codes, there are various officers mentioned: superior and inferior judges; witnesses are also mentioned; and markets and public meetings, where justice seems to have been administered.

71. In observing the barbarian system of fines, what was done, when the offender had no means of paying them ?

In a simple state of society, a fine must have been a serious punishment; neither capital, nor the precious metals could have existed in any abundance; but the laws themselves do not supply a resource in default of payment.

72. In cases of particular homicide, is a process pointed out for satisfaction ?

- The relations and friends were to answer out of their own possessions; and as a last resource, the offender was to compound with a fine for his life.

73. What is said of imprisonment ?

It is not mentioned; and corporal punishment was confined to slaves.

74. Is it supposed that land was easily procured, and society still in a very imperfect state ?

That much land was waste and loosely occupied, we may infer from the fact, that many years afterwards, Charlemagne transplanted, at once, ten thousand Saxons, and fixed them in his own territories.

75. What may have been the original intention of these barbaric laws?

That they were designed to exhibit to contending individuals, what might be considered a reasonable means of terminating their quarrels; what the one ought to offer, the other to accept.

76. As kings gained authority, were they and their officers able to enforce their own regulations?

Efforts to do this, and the power of doing it, are apparent in the subsequent codes. But the disposition to revenge their own affronts and injuries, is so natural to men who comprehend every merit in the virtue of personal courage, that centuries elapsed, before our rude forefathers could be brought to accept any decision in their quarrels, but that of their swords.

77. Do these codes, and the account Tacitus gives of the Germans, mutually confirm and illustrate each other?

The description Tacitus furnishes of their assemblies, agrees with the preface of the Salique law, and the accounts of the other codes; and on the whole, the system of legislation among these northern nations must be considered as originally of a very popular nature.

78. May a variety of conclusions be drawn from these laws, which relate to the manners and situation of the nation?

We may reason thus: he who stole a knife was to be fined fifteen solidi; but though he stole as much flax as

he could carry, he was only fined three ; therefore iron was difficult to procure, or its manufacture not easy. The fertility of the land had done more for these Franks, than their own patience or ingenuity.

79. May we argue in a similar manner that the progress of agriculture and of society was very incomplete ?

In the petty felonies, we find mentioned that of "ploughing and sowing another man's land." A strange offence, and the supposition is unfavourable ; for the owner must either have been too negligent, at too great a distance, or too feeble to take care of his property. And there probably existed wandering savages or settlers, resembling the American "squatters," of the present day, a species of human locusts that take possession of a piece of land, without asking leave of any one, and remain there till they rove away in search of a better, or are driven off by the owner.

80. May the respective states of the barbarians and Romans be traced in these laws ?

Yes, he who killed a Frank, was fined two hundred solidi ; he who killed a Roman only one hundred. We may reasonably conclude that the Romans were in a state of depression, or that the value of their lives was estimated at a degraded rate by the Franks.

81. Are the other codes similar in their nature to the Salique ?

Generally, but all indicate a more advanced state of society.

82. What reason may be assigned for this ?

The Burgundians, the Lombards, and the Visigoths had been more connected with the Romans, and their laws are therefore favourably distinguished from the codes of the more simple and rude barbarians.

83. What were the Capitularies?

Compositions divided into chapters, and attached to the barbaric codes.

84. By whom were these promulgated?

By the subsequent monarchs, Childebert, Clothaire, Carломagne, and Pepin, but above all by Charlemagne: succeeding princes added others.

85. What at this time was the state of the conquered nation of the Romans?

They seem to have been allowed to live under their own laws, if they did not prefer the laws of the barbarian state to which they belonged. Their situation seems to have been marked by depression, but not to the extent that might have been expected.

86. Who was Mahomet?

An individual who started up amidst the deserts of Arabia, and persuaded his countrymen that he was the prophet of God.

87. Were the ancestors of Mahomet illustrious?

His pure and genuine nobility is proved by his descent from the tribe of Koreish, and the family of Hashem, the most illustrious of the Arabs; the princes of Mecca—and the hereditary guardians of the Caaba, the temple of the East.

88. Who were his parents?

Abdallah, the son of Abdol Motalleb and grandson of Hashem, the most beautiful of the Arabian youth, and Amina, of the noble race of the Zahrites.

89. On whom did the care of Mahomet devolve in his childhood?

After the death of his father, mother, and grandfather, the inheritance of the orphan, still an infant, was reduced to five camels, and an Ethiopian man-servant. The most powerful of his uncles, Abu Taleb, became his guide and guardian at home and abroad—in peace and war, until his marriage with Cadijah, a rich and noble widow of Mecca, which alliance restored the son of Abdallah to the rank and influence of his ancestors.

90. When did Mahomet assume the title of prophet ?
In the fortieth year of his age.

91. Was the Arabian prophet distinguished by the beauty of his person ?

His commanding presence, majestic aspect, piercing eye, gracious smile, and flowing beard ; his countenance that painted every sensation of the soul, and his gestures that enforced each expression of the tongue, bespeak the orator who engaged on his side the affections of a public or private audience.

92. What was his natural character ?

His manners were marked by the grave, ceremonious politeness of his country ; attention to the powerful, and condescension to the poor. His frankness and affability concealed the artifice of his views. His memory was capacious and retentive, his wit social, his imagination sublime, his judgment clear, rapid, and decisive. He possessed courage of thought and action ; and though his designs gradually expanded with his success, the first idea he entertained of his Divine mission, bears the stamp of an original and superior genius.

93. Was Mahomet an enthusiast, or, an impostor ?

Both,—the characters are never long separated : enthusiasm naturally overrates its end, overvalues its

authority, and considers all means sanctified that can accomplish its purposes. Imposture is only one amongst others ; and as it is the propensity of enthusiasm at the same time to overlook the distinctions of reason and propriety, what is and what is not imposture, is not always discerned ; nor would be long regarded if it were.

94. How was Mahomet educated ?

By the nobles of the land, in the purest dialect of Arabia ; and the fluency of his speech was corrected and enhanced by the practice of discreet and seasonable silence. With the powers of eloquence, Mahomet was an illiterate barbarian, ignorant of the arts of reading and writing ; confined within a narrow circle of existence, yet the book of nature and of man was open to his view, and political and philosophical observations are ascribed to the prophet. From his earliest youth Mahomet was addicted to religious contemplation, and his designs are often supposed to have originated early in life in a long, comprehensive and profound meditation on the situation of his countrymen, and the nations of the East.

95. Is this probable ?

No : the founders of dynasties, the authors of revolutions, and the conquerors of the world, are men whose characters are formed, not only by original temperament and genius, but by situation and by the occasion ; their ideas open with their circumstances, their ambition expands with their fortunes ; they are gifted with the prophetic eye, that can see the moment that is pregnant with the future ; they are distinguishable by the faculty that discerns what is really impossible, from what only appears to be so ; they can avail themselves of the powers and capacities of every thing around them : the time, the place, the circumstances, the society, the nation,

all are at the proper instant understood and wielded to their purpose. They are the rapid, decisive, fearless, and often desperate rulers of inferior minds; not the calm reasoners or profound contrivers of distant schemes of aggrandisement, seen through a long series of concatenated events—events, which, as they well know, are ever liable to be disturbed by the ceaseless agitations and business of human life, and the unexpected interference of occurrences, which it may be their fortune indeed, and their wisdom to seize and employ, but which they cannot possibly produce or foresee.

96. Of what is the faith, Mahomet preached to his family and nation, compounded?

Of an eternal truth and a necessary fiction, “That there is only one God, and that Mahomet is the apostle of God.”

97. Were the degeneracy of the times and the departure from simplicity of creed, favourable to the introduction of Mahomet’s doctrines?

The voice of Mahomet inviting the Arabs to freedom and victory, to arms, and rapine; to the indulgence of their darling passions in this world, and in the other; rites of Egyptian origin were interwoven with the essence of the Mosaic law; and the spirit of the Gospel had evaporated in the pageantry of the church. The prophet of Mecca was tempted, by prejudice, policy, or patriotism, to sanction the rites of the Arabians, and the custom of visiting the holy stone of the Caaba; but the precepts of Mahomet himself inculcate a more simple and rational piety: prayer, fasting, and alms, are the religious duties of a Mussulman; and he is encouraged to hope that prayer will carry him half way to God, fasting will bring him to the door of his palace, and alms will gain him admittance. The simplicity of

this creed shone by contrast with the idolatrous worship of the world.

98. What two powerful passions of the human heart, did Mahomet contrive to combine in his service?

The love of glory here, and the desire of happiness hereafter.

99. What was the condition of the Hebrew nation at this time?

After the ruin of the temple, the faith of the Hebrew exiles was purified, fixed, and enlightened, by the spiritual devotion of the synagogue. But the children of Israel had ceased to be a people, and the holy text was received in common with the dreams and traditions of the Jewish rabbins.

100. What was the state of Christianity?

The Christians of the seventh century had insensibly relapsed into a semblance of paganism; their public and private vows were addressed to the relics and images that disgraced the temples of the East; the throne of the Almighty was darkened by a cloud of martyrs, and saints, and angels, the objects of popular veneration; and the Collyridian heretics, who flourished in the fruitful soil of Arabia, invested the Virgin Mary with the name and honours of a goddess.

101. Name the most striking and sublime doctrines of the Koran.

The uniformity of the work denotes the hand of a single artist; the creed is free from suspicion or ambiguity; and the Koran is a glorious testimony to the unity of God. The prophet of Mecca rejected the worship of idols and men, of stars and planets, on the rational principle, that whatever rises must set; that whatever is born, must die; that whatever is corruptible,

must decay and perish. The Author of the universe is presented for adoration as an infinite and eternal Being, without form or place, without issue or similitude, present to our most secret thoughts, existing by the necessity of his own nature, and deriving from himself, all moral and intellectual perfection. The authority and station of Adam, Noah, Abraham, Moses, Christ, and Mahomet, rise in just gradation above each other; but whosoever hates or rejects any one of the prophets is numbered with the infidels, and the Mahometans are taught to entertain a high and mysterious reverence for the Author of Christianity.

102. Have the metaphysical questions on the attributes of God and the liberty of man, been agitated in the Mahometan schools?

Yes, but they never engaged the passions of the people, or disturbed the tranquillity of the state. The caliphs, the successors of the prophet and commanders of the faithful, from interested motives, repressed and discouraged all religious innovations, and the sages of the law are both the guides of the conscience of the Moslems, and the oracles of their faith. From the Atlantic to the Ganges, the Koran was acknowledged as the fundamental code, not only of theology, but of civil and criminal jurisprudence; and the laws which regulated the actions and the property of mankind, were guarded by the supposed revelation of the infallible and immutable sanction of the will of God.

103. Does not the permanency of the religion of Mahomet excite our wonder?

We cannot contemplate without astonishment the preservation, through the revolutions of twelve centuries, of the pure and perfect impression which the prophet engraved at Mecca and Medina, by the Indian, African, and Turkish proselytes of the Koran. "If the

Christian apostles, St. Peter and St. Paul, could return to the Vatican," says Gibbon, "they might possibly inquire the name of the Deity who is worshipped with such mysterious rites in that magnificent temple; at Oxford or Geneva they would experience less surprise, but it might still be incumbent on them to study the commentators on their own writings and the words of their Master. But the Turkish dome of St. Sophia, with an increase of splendour and size, represents the humble tabernacle erected at Medina by the hands of Mahomet."

The Mahometans have uniformly withstood the temptation of reducing the object of their faith and devotion to a level with the senses and imaginations of man. "I believe in one God, and Mahomet the apostle of God," is the simple and invariable profession of Islam. The intellectual image of the Deity has never been degraded by any visible idol: the honours of the prophet have never transgressed the measure of human virtue; and his living precepts have restrained the gratitude of his disciples within the bounds of reason and religion.

104. Can we account for the continuance of doctrines which are not founded upon truth?

Yes; Mahometanism being identified with, and essential to, the power of the caliphs, its propagation as their national creed was secured for several centuries; and the wandering conquerors of the East, men without knowledge or reflection, became easy proselytes.

The Koran is not only a religious, but a civil code. To alter, therefore, the religion of a Mahometan is to alter his opinions, habits, and feelings—to give him a new character, a new nature; add to this, that the intolerant expressions and precepts of the Koran have been so improved upon by the followers of Mahomet,

who, without altering the original, substitute a dexterous interpretation, apposite to the manners and policy of the times, that the great characteristic of their religion is, and has been long, a deadly hostility and fixed contempt for the professors of every other belief.

The Koran, therefore, when once established, was (humanly speaking) established for ever; and it has now, for eleven centuries, occupied the faith of a large but unenlightened portion of mankind.

105. Were Mahomet's faith and empire triumphant?

They extended through Asia, Africa, Spain, and nearly through Europe itself; and have left in history a more memorable name, and on his fellow-creatures a more wide and lasting impression, than were ever before produced by the energies of a single mind.

106. Name his disciples in succession.

The Saracens, who contended with the Franks and Greeks for Europe, with the Latins for the Holy Land, with the Visigoths for Spain. The caliphs, who possessed Syria, Persia, and Egypt, who, through different eras of their power, exhibited the most opposite prodigies of simplicity and magnificence. And the Turks, who became converts, and gradually swelled into a great nation, and after obtaining a portion of Europe, materially influenced its history.

107. What were the pretensions of this religion?

It professed to be derived from Divine inspiration.

108. What did Mahomet assert with regard to the Koran?

That its substance was uncreated and eternal; subsisting in the essence of the Deity, and inscribed with a pen of light on the table of his everlasting decrees;

that a paper copy, in a volume of silk and gems, was brought down to the lowest heaven by the angel Gabriel, who, under the Jewish economy, had been despatched on the most important errands; and that this trusty messenger successively revealed the chapters and verses to the Arabian prophet.

109. Was the Koran produced as a perfect revelation of the Divine will?

No; the fragments were displayed at the discretion of Mahomet; each revelation is suited to the emergencies of his policy or passion; and all contradiction is removed by the saving maxim, that any text of Scripture is abrogated or modified by any subsequent passage.

110. How was the Koran preserved?

“The word of God and of the apostle,” was diligently recorded by disciples, on palm-leaves, and the shoulder-bones of mutton; and the pages, without order or connexion, were cast into a domestic chest, in the custody of Ayesha, one of the prophet’s wives.

111. Who collected and published the sacred volume?

Abubeker, the friend and successor of Mahomet; the work was revised by the caliph Othman, in the thirtieth year of the Hegira.

112. On what did the prophet rest the truth of his mission?

On the merits of his book; and in the spirit of enthusiasm or vanity, he audaciously challenged both men and angels to imitate the beauties of a single page; and presumed to assert, that God alone could dictate so incomparable a performance.

113. Is the Mahometan faith entitled to examination?

Yes; to be unacquainted with this religion, is to be ignorant of the faith of a large division of mankind.

114. Is an inquiry into its rise and propagation useful?

It will amplify our knowledge of human nature; and an attention to the life of its prophet may enlarge our comprehension of the many particular varieties of the human character. And lastly, this creed has often been compared with the religion of Christ; and the success of the Koran has been adduced to weaken the argument that is drawn from the propagation of the Gospel.

115. What is the natural result of this investigation?

It enforces upon the inquirer this general evidence of his own faith, and animates his mind with the contrast between the religion of the Koran and the Gospel, between Mahomet and Jesus; the contrast between falsehood and truth, between the fierce and polluted passions of earth, and the pure and perfect holiness of heaven.

116. Was the conquest of the East achieved by Mahomet or his successors?

Had not Mahomet attached to his fortunes and faith a few men of singular virtues and extraordinary military talents, his religion might have perished with him, and the Arabians at his death might have relapsed into their former habits of loose political association, and blind unthinking idolatry.

117. Was the conversion of his disciples a work of time?

He was three years in convincing his wife, his slave, his cousin, and eleven others, of the truth of his mission. He was ten years employed in extending the number of his disciples within the walls of Mecca. After flying from Mecca, and being received and protected at Medina, it was six years before he could again approach his native city; two more before he could establish there his sovereignty and worship, and two more before the various tribes of Arabia could be brought to acknowledge him for their prophet. On several occasions the fate of himself and of his religion hung on the most wavering and doubtful balance.

118. When did Mahomet die?

A.D. 632, in the sixty-third year of his age. An expedition for the conquest of Syria was stopped by this event; the army halted at the gates of Medina; the chiefs assembled round their dying master—the city, more especially the house of the prophet, was a scene of a clamorous sorrow or silent despair.

119. Where was the prophet buried?

He was interred by the hands of his nearest kinsman, on the same spot on which he expired; and the innumerable pilgrims of Mecca turn aside from the way, to bow, in voluntary devotion, before the simple tomb of the prophet. Mahomet was not only the leader of an invincible army—he held empire over the feelings and faith of his nation, until the angel of death closed his eyes for ever on the prospect of human greatness, and removed him to the presence of that awful Being whose laws he had violated, whose name he had abused, and whose creatures he had deceived.

120. Did the empires of the East bow before the concentrated tribes of Arabia?

They were unable to resist the powerful attacks of these nations of the desert, who were inured to privation and hardship, and educated in habits still more tremendous, of fanaticism and fury.

121. Give an instance of this at the siege of Damascus.

Caled, lieutenant to the first caliph, the “sword of God,” and the “scourge of the infidels,” was signalised by personal prowess in the first sally. After an obstinate combat, he had overthrown and made prisoner one of the Christian leaders, a powerful antagonist. He instantly mounted a fresh horse, the gift of the governor of Palmyra, and rushed forwards to the battle. “Repose yourself for a moment,” said his friend Derar, “and permit me to supply your place: you are fatigued with fighting with this dog.” “O Derar!” replied the indefatigable Saracen, “we shall rest in the world to come. He that labours to-day, shall rest to-morrow.”

122. What was the character of Derar?

Hatred of the Christians, love of spoil, and contempt of danger, were the ruling passions of this adventurous and valorous Saracen. The prospect of instant death could never shake his religious confidence, ruffle the calmness of his resolution, or even suspend the frankness and martial plausantry of his humour. After being thrice a prisoner, he survived to relate the achievements, and enjoy the rewards of the Syrian conquest.

123. Did his rashness call forth a censure from the general?

His single lance had maintained a flying fight against thirty Romans, and after killing or unhorsing seventeen of their number, he returned in safety to his companions, who admonished, while they applauded him.

124. How did he reply?

He excused himself with the simplicity of a soldier. “ Nay, I did not begin first : but they came out to take me, and I was afraid that God should see me turn my back : and indeed I fought in good earnest, and without doubt God assisted me against them : and had I not been apprehensive of disobeying your orders, I should not have come away as I did ; and I perceive already that they will fall into our hands.”

125. What Christian hero affected to despise the enthusiasm of the Arabs?

Thomas, a noble Greek.

126. To whom was his dexterity as an archer fatal?

To the boldest Saracen, whose death was revenged by a woman.

127. Who was this heroine?

The wife of Aban, who had followed him to the holy war. She embraced her expiring husband, and addressed him thus : “ Happy, happy, art thou, my dear ! thou art gone to thy Lord who first joined us together, and then parted us asunder. I will revenge thy death, and endeavour to the utmost of my power to come to the place where thou art, because I love thee.”

128. Did she accomplish her purpose?

Without a groan, without a tear, she washed the corpse of her husband, and buried him with the usual rites. Then grasping the manly weapons, which in her native land she was accustomed to wield, the intrepid widow of Aban sought the place where his murderer fought in the thickest of the battle. Her first arrow pierced the hand of his standard-bearer ; her second wounded Thomas in the eye : and the assembled

Christians no longer beheld their ensign or their leader.

129. Did Caled oblige the Christians to retreat?

When the sleeping camp of the Saracens was surprised at midnight, Caled was the first in arms; at the head of four hundred horse he flew to the post of danger, and the tears trickled down his iron cheeks, as he uttered a fervent ejaculation, “O God! who never sleepest, look upon thy servants, and do not deliver them into the hands of their enemies!”

130. How was the city of Damascus taken?

After a siege of seventy days, a deputation of the clergy and the people repaired at midnight to the tent of the venerable Abu Obeidah, whose mild virtues they revered: he courteously entered into an agreement with them, that all hostilities should cease,—that all who wished to emigrate, might carry their effects away in safety,—and the subjects who remained should be tributary to the caliph. The people were submissively grateful to the benevolent commander who thus rescued their city from destruction.

131. Was the fierce Caled surprised at this mild procedure?

Ignorant of the capitulation, he entered at the eastern gate. His cry was “No quarter, no quarter to the enemies of the Lord!” His trumpets sounded, and a torrent of Christian blood was poured down the streets of Damascus. When he reached the church of St. Mary, he was astonished and provoked by the peaceful aspect of his companions; their swords were in their scabbards, and they were surrounded by a multitude of priests and monks.

132. How did Abu Obeidah meet him?

He saluted the general ; “God,” said he, “has delivered the city into my hands by way of surrender, and has saved the believers the trouble of fighting.” “And am I not,” replied the indignant Caled, “am I not the lieutenant of the commander of the faithful ? Have I not taken the city by storm ? The unbelievers shall perish by the sword. Fall on !” The hungry and cruel Arabs would have obeyed the welcome command ; and Damascus was lost, if the benevolence and dignified firmness of Abu Obeidah had not suspended the fury of the chiefs.

133. Who was Abdallah ?

The son of Jaafar, considered by the Arabians a glorious and holy martyr ; he undertook with a banner of five hundred horse the commission of despoiling the infidels.

134. What was the scene of these pious exploits ?

The fair of Abyla, held among the vineyards between Damascus and Heliopolis.

135. Did the concourse of people surpass his expectations ?

Ten thousand pilgrims and merchants had assembled to trade, and pay their superstitious vows at the cell of the hermit of Abyla, besides five thousand horse-guards who attended the daughter of the governor of Tripoli, whose nuptials were celebrating. The Saracens paused when they beheld the vast multitude of Jews and Christians, Greeks and Armenians, natives of Syria and strangers from Egypt. But they were rallied by Abdallah. “For my own part,” exclaimed the enthusiast, “I dare not go back: our foes are many, our danger is great ; but our reward is splendid and secure, either in this life or in the life to come. Let every man, according to his inclination, advance or retire.”

136. What was the effect of this declaration?

Not a Mussulman deserted his standard. "Lead the way," said Abdallah; "you shall see what the companions of the prophet can perform." They charged in five squadrons, but after the first surprise, were overwhelmed by the multitude of their enemies.

137. What was their relief in this extremity?

The welcome sound of the "Tubir," or shout of onset, announced the arrival of Caled, at the utmost speed of his cavalry. The Christians were broken by his attack, and slaughtered in their flight as far as the river Tripoli.

138. Did the Arabian women enlist in the "holy wars?"

The sister of Derar occupied the last line of the army with the women who were accustomed to wield the bow and lance.

139. What was the prompt and forcible exhortation used by the Mahometan generals?

"Paradise is before you, the devil and hell-fire in your rear!"

140. At the end of the Syrian war, after the sieges and battles of six campaigns, was the number of the Moslems much reduced?

Many thousands had died with the reputation and the cheerfulness of martyrs; and the simplicity of their faith may be expressed in the words of an Arabian youth, when he embraced for the last time his sister and mother: "It is not," said he, "the delicacies of Syria, or the fading delights of this world, that have prompted me to devote my life in the cause of religion. But I seek the favour of God and his apostle; and I have heard from one of the companions of the prophet,

that the spirits of the martyrs will be lodged in the crops of green birds, who shall taste of the fruits, and drink of the rivers of paradise. Farewell! we shall meet again among the groves and fountains which God has provided for his elect."

141. Where is Caled's tomb?

The tomb of the "sword of God," is in the neighbourhood of Emesa. He survived his brethren three years, and was deemed invulnerable so long as he wore a cap which had been blessed by Mahomet.

142. Name some of the Saracens who distinguished themselves in the battles of Syria?

The generous and virtuous caliph, Omar; and the youthful Amrou, a proselyte to the doctrines of Mahomet.

143. What was the character of Amrou?

In all the sieges and battles he united, with the temper of a chief, the valour of an adventurous soldier. In a visit to Medina, the caliph expressed a wish to survey the sword which had cut down so many Christian warriors. The son of Aasi unsheathed a short ordinary scimitar; and as he perceived the surprise of Omar, "Alas!" said the modest Saracen, "the sword itself, without the arm of its master, is neither sharper nor more weighty than the sword of Pharezdak the poet."

144. What is related of Amrou at the siege of Alexandria?

In every attack, the sword, the bauner of Amrou, glittered in the van of the Moslems. On a memorable day he was betrayed by his imprudent valour: his followers, who had entered the citadel, were driven back, and the general, with a friend and a slave, remained a

prisoner in the hands of the Christians. When Amrou was conducted before the *præfect*, he remembered his dignity, and forgot his situation ; a lofty demeanour and resolute language revealed the lieutenant of the caliph, and the battle-axe of a soldier was already raised to strike off the head of the audacious captive. His life was saved by the readiness of his slave, who instantly gave his master a blow on the face, and commanded him, in an angry tone, to be silent in the presence of his superiors. The credulous Greek was deceived ; he listened to the offer of a treaty, and his prisoners were dismissed in the hope of a more respectable embassy, till the joyful acclamations of the camp announced the return of their general, and insulted the folly of the infidels.

145. Who planted the Mahometan standard on the walls of the capital of Egypt ?

Amrou : “ I have taken,” said he to the caliph, “ the great city of the West. It is impossible for me to enumerate the variety of its riches and beauty ; and I shall content myself with observing, that it contains four thousand palaces, four thousand baths, four hundred theatres or places of amusement, twelve thousand shops for the sale of vegetable food, and forty thousand tributary Jews. The town has been subdued with force of arms, without treaty or capitulation, and the Moslems are impatient to seize the fruits of their victory.”

146. Did the “ commander of the faithful ” order the city to be sacked ?

He rejected with firmness the idea of pillage, and directed his lieutenant to reserve the wealth and revenue of Alexandria for the public service and the propagation of the faith.

147. How did Amrou describe the land of Egypt to Omar, the caliph?

He presented a lively and faithful picture of the realm of Pharaoh and the Amalekites. “O commander of the faithful, Egypt is a compound of black earth and green plants, between a pulverised mountain and a red sand. The distance from Syene to the sea is a month’s journey for a horseman. Along the valley descends a river, on which the blessing of the Most High reposes both in the evening and morning, and which rises and falls with the revolutions of the sun and moon. When the annual dispensation of Providence unlocks the springs and fountains that nourish the earth, the Nile rolls his swelling and sounding waters through the realm of Egypt: the fields are overspread by the salutary flood; and the villages communicate with each other in their painted barks. The retreat of the inundation deposits a fertilising mud for the reception of the various seeds: the crowds of husbandmen who blacken the land may be compared to a swarm of industrious ants; and their native indolence is quickened by the lash of the task-master, and the promise of the flowers and fruits of a plentiful increase. Their hope is seldom deceived; but the riches which they extract from the wheat, the barley, and the rice, the legumes, the fruit-trees, and the cattle, are unequally shared between those who labour and those who possess. According to the vicissitudes of the seasons, the face of the country is adorned with a silver wave, a verdant emerald, and the deep yellow of a golden harvest.”

148. Who was Akbah?

The “conqueror of Africa.” He marched from Damascus at the head of ten thousand of the bravest Arabs, the force of the Moslems being strengthened by several thousand barbarians. It is difficult to trace his

line of progress until he reached the Great Desert and the Atlantic.

149. What was his enthusiastic language on reaching that mighty ocean ?

The career, though not the zeal, of Akbah was checked by the prospect of a boundless ocean. He spurred his horse into the waves, and raising his eyes to heaven exclaimed, with the tone of a fanatic, "Great God ! if my course were not stopped by this sea, I would still go on, to the unknown kingdoms of the West, preaching the unity of thy holy name, and putting to the sword the rebellious nations who worship any other gods than Thee !"

150. Who was Tarik ?

A dauntless and skilful soldier, who commanded five thousand veterans and volunteers, and landed at the pillar or point of Europe marked by the name of their chief, "*Gebel al Tarik*," corrupted into the appellation Gibraltar.

151. What was his reception ?

Edeco, Roderic's lieutenant, had orders to seize and bind the presumptuous strangers ; but the governors had speedily to inform the king his general had been defeated by the Saracens.

152. Describe the defeat of Roderic by the Moslems, on the plain of Xeres ?

Notwithstanding the valour of the Saracens, they fainted under the weight of multitudes, and the plain of Xeres, near Cadiz, was overspread with their dead bodies. "My brethren," said Tarik to his surviving companions, "the enemy is before you, the sea is behind ; whither would ye fly ? Follow your general : I am resolved either to lose my life or to trample on the

prostrate king of the Romans." The treachery of Count Julian, the two princes, sons of Witiza, and the Archbishop of Toledo, turned the fortune of the day against Roderic, who, amidst the general disorder caused by their defection, started from his car of ivory, and mounted Orelia, the fleetest of his horses; but he escaped from a soldier's death to perish more ignobly in the waters of the Bœtis or Guadalquivir. "Such," said the Arabs, "is the fate of those kings who withdraw themselves from a field of battle."

153. How did Count Julian complete the measure of his guilt?

By traitorously planning the destruction of his nation with the victorious Saracen.

154. What was his advice to Tarik?

"The king of the Goths is slain, their princes are fled before you, the army is routed, the nation is astonished. Secure with sufficient detachments the cities of Bœtica; but in person and without delay march to the royal city of Toledo, and allow not the distracted Christians either time or tranquillity for the election of a new monarch."

155. What was the result?

The ruin of the Gothic monarchy.

156. What was the Mahometan treaty with Spain, when that country was conquered by Musa, in 712?

During the absence of his father, Abdelaziz, the son of Musa, chastised the insurgents of Seville, and reduced, from Malaga to Valentia, the sea-coast of the Mediterranean. His original treaty with the discreet and valiant Theodemir will represent the manners and policy of the times. "The conditions of peace agreed and sworn between Abdelaziz, the son of Musa, the son

of Nassir, and Theodemir, prince of the Goths. In the name of the most merciful God, Abdelaziz makes peace on these conditions : *that* Theodemir shall not be disturbed in his principality ; nor any injury be offered to the life or property, the wives or children, the religion and temples of the Christians : *that* Theodemir shall freely deliver his seven cities, Orihnela, Valentola, Alicant, Mola, Vacasora, Bigerra, Ora, and Lorca : *that* he shall not assist or entertain the enemies of the caliph, but shall faithfully communicate his knowledge of their hostile designs : *that* himself, and each of the Gothic nobles, shall annually pay one piece of gold, four measures of wheat, as many of barley, with a certain proportion of honey, oil, and vinegar ; and that each of their vassals shall be taxed at one moiety of the said imposition. Given the fourth of Regeb, in the year of the Hegira ninety-four, and subscribed with the names of four Mussulman witnesses.”

157. How were Theodemir and his subjects treated ?

With the greatest lenity ; but the rate of tribute appears to have fluctuated from a tenth to a fifth, according to the submission or obstinacy of the Christians.

158. What did Musa find in the church of St. Mary, at Carcassone ?

Seven equestrian statues of massive silver.

159. Who was Mohammed ?

After the caliphs of the house of Amimyah lost the public favour, Mohammed, the son of Ali, the son of Abdallah, the son of Abbas, the uncle of the prophet, gave audience to the deputies of Chorasan, and accepted their free gift of four hundred thousand pieces of gold.

160. In whose name was the oath of allegiance administered after the death of Mohammed ?

In the name of his son Ibrahim.

161. When was the religion of the Magi in Persia supplanted by Mahometanism?

On the conquest of that country by the caliph of the Saracens, A.D. 651. The wars of the Moslems were sanctioned by the example and precepts of Mahomet; and with verses from the Koran inscribed on the blades of their scimitars, the Arab enthusiasts followed their general to the bloody plains of Cadessia.

“A chief, unmoved alike
 'Mid eyes that weep and swords that strike;—
 One of that saintly, murderous brood,
 To carnage and the Koran given,
 Who think through unbelievers' blood
 Lies their direst path to heaven;—
 One, who will pause and kneel unshod,
 In the warm blood his hand hath pour'd,
 To mutter o'er some text of God
 Engraven on his reeking sword;—
 Nay, who can coolly note the line,
 The letter of those words divine,
 To which his blade, with searching art,
 Had sunk into its victim's heart!¹³

162. What were the Persian idolators called?

Ghebers, or Fire-worshippers. They consider their Zend, or Pazend, as one of the ten books received from heaven by Abraham, who is styled the Prophet of the Ghebers. They adore a Supreme Being under the title of “God of Light,” worship fire as an emblem, and imagining the sun a globe of fire, in which the throne of the Almighty is seated, erect temples and altars to that luminary as Mythras, or Mihir.

163. Where did the Ghebers build their temples?

Over subterraneous fires. At the city of Yezd, in Persia, called the Darûb Abadest, or seat of religion, was the celebrated Fire Temple, or Atush Kudu, held sacred since the time of Zoroaster.

164. What was the Kohé Gubr?

A mountain, the top of which resembled a cupola,

on whose lofty summit were the remains of a fire temple, superstitiously supposed to be the residence of deeves, or sprites, who punished all audacious explorers, and

“ Bold were the Moslem who would dare,
At twilight hour, to steer his skiff
Beneath the Gheber’s lonely cliff.”

165. Were their temples devoid of images ?

Yes ; but the Magian ceremonies were idolatrous.

166. Name some of them.

They placed rich viands on the tops of high towers, for the peris and spirits of their departed heroes. When around their altars, they drank water and chewed pomegranate leaves, to cleanse them from inward sin.

167. How did the Parsees at Oulam worship the sun ?

Early in the morning they crowded to pay their devotions to that glorious orb, in gratitude for the great benefits flowing from its ministerial omniscience. Spheres consecrated, and placed on altars, were whirled round at sunrise, by mechanism, with astonishing rapidity and a rushing noise ; at which the assembled Ghebers, holding censers in their hands, offered incense.

“ Morn and even,
Hail’d their Creator’s dwelling-place
Among the living lights of heaven.”

168. Describe the magnificence of the caliphs after the conquest of the East.

Almansor, the brother and successor of Saffa in 750, A.D., laid the foundation of the city of Bagdad, or “ The Garden of the Hermit,” the imperial seat of his posterity for five hundred years ; and after his wars and buildings, left at his death a treasure of thirty millions sterling in gold and silver.

169. Who succeeded him ?

Mahadi, his son ; who devoted six millions of dinars of gold in a single pilgrimage to Mecca. He established caravanseras and built cisterns along a measured road of seven hundred miles, and astonished the Arabs by a train of camels laden with snow.

170. What is said of Almamon ?

That he gave away four-fifths of the income of a province, a sum of two millions four hundred thousand gold dinars, before he drew his foot from the stirrup.

171. What marked the magnificence of his nuptials ?

A thousand pearls of the largest size were showered on the head of the bride, and missilia thrown among the crowd, entitling those who caught them to lands and houses.

172. Describe the state and wealth of Moctader.

The caliph's army, both horse and foot, was under arms, the force consisting of one hundred and sixty thousand men. His state officers, the favourite slaves, stood near him in splendid apparel, their belts glittering with gold and gems. Near them were seven thousand eunuchs, four thousand of them white, the remainder black. The porters, or door-keepers, were in number seven hundred. Barges and boats, with the most superb decorations, were kept sailing upon the Tigris.

173. Was the palace equally splendid ?

Thirty-eight thousand pieces of tapestry, twelve thousand five hundred of which were of silk embroidered with gold, adorned the walls, and the carpets on the floors were twenty-two thousand.

174. What animals were kept at the court to denote the power of the caliph ?

Two hundred lions, each lion attended by a keeper.

175. Name one of the most gorgeous displays of luxurious ornament.

A tree of gold and silver spreading into eighteen large branches, on which, and on the lesser boughs, sat a variety of birds made of the same metals. While the machinery affected spontaneous motions, the several varieties of birds warbled their natural harmonies.

176. Where were the palace and gardens of Zehra ?

Three miles from Cordova.

177. Who constructed them ?

Abdalrahman.

178. How many years did it take to complete the building ?

Twenty-five years, and three millions sterling were expended by the founder.

179. Describe the structure.

The artists of Constantinople, the most skilful sculptors and architects of the age, were employed. Twelve hundred columns of Spanish and African, Greek and Italian marble adorned and supported the edifice. The hall of audience was encrusted with gold and pearls, and an immense basin in the centre was surrounded with curious and costly figures of birds and quadrupeds. In a lofty pavilion of the gardens, one of these basins and fountains, so delightful in a sultry climate, was replenished with the purest quicksilver.

180. How was Abdalrahman attended to the field ?

By a guard of twelve thousand horse, whose belts and scimitars were studded with gold.

181. Was happiness the result of this luxury ?

An authentic memorial was found in the closet of

Abdalrahman after his decease, and this is the testimony of that caliph, whose magnificence had excited the admiration and envy of the world. “I have now reigned above fifty years in victory or peace, beloved by my subjects, dreaded by my enemies, and respected by my allies. Riches and honours, power and pleasure, have waited on my call, nor does any earthly blessing appear to have been wanting to my felicity. In this situation I have diligently numbered the days of pure and genuine happiness which have fallen to my lot; they amount to *fourteen!* O man! place not thy confidence in this present world!”

182. In what year was literature introduced among the Arabs?

A.D. 754.

183. What was the reply of Harun al Raschid to the Byzantine monarch Nicephorus?

When the mother of Constantine was deposed and banished, her successor, Nicephorus, resolved to decline the payment of the tribute, as a badge of servitude and disgrace. The epistle of the emperor to the caliph was pointed with an allusion to the game of chess, which had already spread from Persia to Greece. “The queen (he spoke of Irene) considered you as a rook, and herself as a pawn. That pusillanimous female submitted to pay a tribute, the double of which she ought to have exacted from the barbarian. Restore, therefore, the fruits of your injustice, or abide the determination of the sword.” At these words the ambassadors cast a bundle of swords before the foot of the throue. The caliph smiled at the menace, and drawing his scimitar, Samsamah, a weapon of historic or fabulous renown, he cut asunder the feeble arms of the Greeks, without turning the edge or endangering the temper of his blade. He then dictated an epistle

of tremendous brevity: "In the name of the most merciful God, Harun al Raschid, commander of the faithful, to Nicephorus, the Roman dog. I have read thy letter, O thou son of an unbelieving mother! Thou shalt not hear, thou shalt behold my reply." It was written in characters of blood and fire on the plains of Phrygia; and the warlike celerity of the Arabs was only checked by the arts of deceit and the show of repentance.

184. Who was Carmath?

An Arabian preacher, who assumed the lofty and incomprehensible style of the Guide, the Director, the Demonstration, the Word, the Holy Ghost, the Camel, the Herald of the Messiah, who had conversed with him in human shape, and the representative of Mahomet the son of Ali, of St. John the Baptist, and of the angel Gabriel.

185. How many apostles had Carmath?

Twelve; they dispersed themselves among the Bedouins, a race of men equally devoid of reason and of religion; and the success of their preaching seemed to threaten Arabia with a new revolution.

186. Describe the pillage of Mecca.

Averse to the worship of Mecca, the Carmathians robbed a caravan of pilgrims travelling to that place, and twenty thousand devout Moslems were abandoned on the burning sands to a death of hunger and thirst. The next year they suffered them to proceed without interruption; but in the festival of devotion Abu Taher stormed the holy city, and trampled on the most venerable relics of the Moslem faith.

187. Did these rapacious devotees stop here?

No, they put thirty thousand citizens and strangers

to the sword ; the sacred precincts were polluted by the burial of three thousand bodies ; the well of Zemzene overflowed with blood ; the golden spout was forced from its place ; the veil of the Caaba was divided ; and the black stone, the first monument of the nation, borne away in triumph.

188. What influence may we consider this sect had over the destinies of the Saracens ?

It was the second visible cause of the decline and fall of the empire of the caliphs.

189. Who founded the dynasty of the Aghlabites ?

Ibrahim, the son of Aghlab, the lieutenant of the vigilant and rigid Harun.

190. Was this the first independent dynasty ?

After the revolt of Spain from the temporal and spiritual supremacy of the Abbassides, the first symptoms of disobedience broke forth in the province of Africa.

191. Who erected the kingdom and city of Fez ?

The Edrisites.

192. Which was the first dynasty of the East ?

The Taherites, a. d. 813, descendants of the valiant Taher.

193. Who were the Soffarides ?

A people governed by an adventurer, who left his trade of a brazier for the profession of a robber ; hence the name.

194. What dynasty vanquished the Soffarian army ?

The Sansanides, who came to the succour of the Abbassides, a powerful but poor people, who conquered a force eight times more numerous than themselves.

195. Name the origin of the Toulunides and Ikshidites.

They were Turkish slaves, who usurped the rule of the provinces of Egypt and Syria.

196. What tribe occupied Mesopotamia and the important cities of Mosul and Aleppo?

The Namadanites, Arabian princes. Their elevation and reign exhibit a scene of treachery, murder, and parricide; yet they are unblushingly declared by the poets as beautiful, eloquent, liberal, and valorous, famed for their virtues.

197. Who usurped the Persian kingdom?

The Bowides, three brothers, who maintained their sovereignty by the sword. They were styled the support and columns of the state. From the Caspian sea to the ocean they suffered no tyrants but themselves. Under their reign the language and genius of Persia revived, and the Arabs, three hundred and four years after the death of Mahomet, were deprived of the sceptre of the East.

198. In what year was the power of the caliphs of Bagdad reduced?

A.D. 936.

199. What empress reigned in Rome, Italy, and Germany, A.D. 988?

Theophano, daughter of the emperor Romanus, and widow of the eldest son of Otho the Great, emperor of Germany.

200. Who was Wolodomir?

A pagan of the North and great prince of Russia; he aspired to the hand of a princess of the Roman purple, and enforced his claim by threats of war, promises of

conversion, and the offer of powerful succour against a domestic rebel.

201. Describe the tactics and character of the Greeks.

From the age of Charlemagne to that of the Crusades, the world, excepting the remote monarchy of China, was occupied and disputed by the three great empires or nations of the Greeks, the Saracens, and the Franks. The Greeks were inferior to their rivals in courage, but they were superior to the Franks and equal to the Saracens in arts and riches, and in obedience to a supreme head. The "Greek fire" was employed in sieges and sea-fights with terrible effect ; but the catapultæ, balistæ, and battering-rams were still the most frequent and powerful defence of fortifications ; steel and iron were still the common instruments of destruction and safety ; and the helmets, cuirasses, and shields of the tenth century did not essentially differ from those which had covered the companions of Alexander or Achilles. The religion of the Greeks did not inspire them with military ambition. The patriarch, the bishops, and the principal senators, strenuously urged that those who held the profession of arms should be separated during three years from the communion of the faithful.

202. What was the character of the Saracens ?

The fears of the first Moslems when held back from battle strikingly contrast with the scruples of the Greeks ; but the subjects of the last caliphs undoubtedly degenerated from the zeal and faith of the companions of the prophet. Yet their martial creed still represented the Deity as the author of war. The vital though latent spark of fanaticism still glowed in the heart of their religion, and among the Saracens who dwelt on the Christian borders it was frequently re-kindled to a lively and active flame.

203. How was their regular force formed ?

Of the valiant slaves who had been educated to guard the person and accompany the standard of their lord, augmented as occasion required by the people of Syria and Cilicia, of Africa and Spain, who rallied as the trumpet proclaimed war against the infidels.

204. Were all classes influenced by the same spirit ?

Yes ; the rich were ambitious of death or victory in the cause of God ; the poor were allured by the hope of plunder and future reward ; and the old, the infirm, and the women assumed their share of meritorious service, by sending their substitutes with arms and horses into the field.

205. May we compare the Moslem warriors to the Romans ?

Their offensive and defensive arms were similar in strength and temper to those of the Romans, but they far exceeded all their rivals in the management of the horse and the bow. The massy silver of their belts, their bridles, and their swords, displayed the magnificence of a prosperous nation, though the black archers of the South disdained the effeminacy of these appendages.

206. Were they inured to hardship ?

Their patience of thirst and heat was invincible, but their spirits were frozen by a winter's cold ; and the consciousness of their propensity to sleep exacted the most rigorous precautions.

207. What was their order of battle ?

A long square of two deep and solid lines ; the first of archers, the second of cavalry. In their engagements by sea and land, they sustained with patient firmness the fury of the attack, and seldom advanced to

the charge till they could discern and oppress the lassitude of their foes. But if repulsed and broken, they knew not how to rally or renew the combat; and their dismay was heightened by the superstitious prejudice, that God had declared himself on the side of their enemies.

208. How far did the victorious influence of the Franks or Latins extend?

Over the greater part of Gaul, Germany, and Italy.

209. Describe their character and tactics in the words of Constantine.

“The Franks,” said the emperor, “are bold and valiant to the verge of temerity; and their dauntless spirit is supported by the contempt of danger and death. In the field and in close onset they press to the front, and rush headlong against the enemy, without deigning to compute either his numbers or their own. Their ranks are formed by the close connexions of consanguinity and friendship; and their martial deeds are prompted by the desire of saving or revenging their dearest companions. In their eyes a retreat is a shameful flight; and flight is indelible infamy.”

210. What was the glory of the nobles of France at this period?

That in their humble dwellings war and rapine were the only pleasures, the sole occupation of their lives. They affected to despise the palaces, the banquets, and the polished manners of the Italians, who, even in the estimation of the Greeks, had degenerated from the liberty and valour of the Lombards.

211. From whose reign may we date the gradual oblivion of the Latin tongue?

The reign of Justinian.

212. When did the Bulgarians become a settled nation?

A.D. 888. They improved in civilisation by peaceful intercourse with the Greeks; and the nobles of Bulgaria were educated in the schools and palaces of Constantinople.

213. What signal act of cruelty distinguished Basil the Second?

This conqueror of the Bulgarians inflicted a cool and exquisite vengeance on fifteen thousand captives, who had been guilty of the offence of defending their country. They were deprived of sight; but to one of each hundred a single eye was left, that he might conduct his blind century to the presence of their king. Their king is said to have expired of grief and horror. The nation was awed by this terrible example.

214. What was the result?

The Bulgarians were swept away from their settlements, and circumscribed within a narrow province; the surviving chiefs bequeathed to their children the advice of patience and the duty of revenge.

215. When was the name of Russians first divulged?

In the ninth century, by an embassy from Theophilus, emperor of the East, to the emperor of the West, Lewis, the son of Charlemagne. The Greeks were accompanied by the envoys of the great duke, or chazan, or czar of the Russians.

216. When did the Normans burst forth in the spirit of naval and military enterprise?

In the ninth century.

217. In what countries did they appear?

The regions of Denmark, Sweden, and Norway were

crowded with independent chieftains and desperate adventurers, who sighed in the laziness of peace, and smiled in the agonies of death.

218. Where were their first naval achievements ?

The Baltic was the scene of enterprise ; they visited the eastern shores, the silent residence of Finnic and Sclavonian tribes ; and the primitive Russians of the lake Ladoga, paid a tribute, the skins of white squirrels, to these strangers, whom they saluted with the title of Varangians, or Corsairs.

219. Who was Ruric ?

A Scandinavian chief. He founded a dynasty, A.D. 862, which lasted above seven hundred years. His brothers extended his influence : the example of service and usurpation was imitated by his companions in the southern provinces of Russia ; and their establishments, by the usual methods of war and assassination, were cemented into the fabric of a powerful monarchy.

220. How was Russia governed after Ruric ?

By the sword of the Varangians of Constantinople.

221. What Russian prince delivered his country from these Scandinavian chieftains ?

Waladimir.

222. What is said of the Varangians at the Byzantine court ?

They constituted the guard, and were recruited in strength by numerous bands of English and Danes. The vague appellation of Thule was then given to England.

223. What characterised them ?

Till the last age of the empire they preserved the in-

heritance of spotless loyalty, and the use of the Danish or English tongue. With their broad and double-edged battle-axes on their shoulders, they attended the Greek emperor to the temple, the senate, and the hippodrome ; he slept and feasted under their trusty guard ; and the keys of the palace, the treasury, and the capital were held by the firm and faithful hands of the Varangians.

224. Describe the first naval expedition of the Russians against Constantinople.

Under the command of the princes of Kiow, they, without opposition, possessed themselves of the port of Constantinople, during the absence of the emperor Michael, the son of Theophilus. But a tempest, which followed the return of that monarch, obliged the Russians to retreat.

225. Who made a second attempt ?

Oleg, the guardian of the sons of Ruric, A.D. 904.

226. Who led the third armament ?

Igor, the son of Ruric ; but he was defeated with great loss.

227. Who resumed the project of naval invasion ?

Jaroslaus, the great grandson of Igor. His fleet was repulsed with Greek fire at the entrance of the Bosphorus, though with considerable loss to the Greeks.

228. Who was Swatoslaus ?

The son of Igor. He subdued the nations from the Volga to the Don. The vigour of his mind and body was fortified by the hardships of a military life.

229. Were his habits ferocious ?

Wrapt in a bearskin, Swatoslaus usually slept on the

ground, his head reclining on a saddle. His coarse, frugal diet, like that of the heroes of Homer, was horse-flesh broiled on the coals. Exercise gave stability and discipline to his army, and no soldier exceeded his chief in luxury.

230. Who defeated this Russian prince ?

John Zimisces, A.D. 970.

231. Which may be considered the era of Russian Christianity ?

The time of the baptism of Olga, a princess of base origin, who revenged the death and assumed the sceptre of her husband Igor : she possessed the active virtues which commanded the fear and obedience of barbarians.

232. In what year was the siege of Bari ?

A.D. 871.

233. What was the reply of the Carlovingian prince to the Greeks, on their assuming as their own the merit of the conquest ?

“ We confess the magnitude of your preparations,” said Lewis, the great-grandson of Charlemagne ; “ your armies were indeed as numerous as a cloud of summer locusts, who darken the day, flap their wings, and after a short flight tumble weary and breathless to the ground. Like them, ye sunk after a feeble effort ; ye were vanquished by your own cowardice ; and withdrew from the scene of action to injure and despoil our Christian subjects of the Sclavonian coast. We were few in number, and why were we few ? because, after a tedious expectation of your arrival, I had dismissed my host, and retained only a chosen band of warriors to continue the blockade of the city. If they indulged their hospitable feasts in the face of danger and death,

did these feasts abate the vigour of their enterprise? Is it by your fasting that the walls of Bari have been overturned? Did not these valiant Franks, diminished as they were by languor and fatigue, intercept and vanquish the three most powerful emirs of the Saracens? and did not their defeat precipitate the fall of the city? Bari is now fallen; Tarentum trembles; Calabria will be delivered; and, if we command the sea, the island of Sicily may be rescued from the hands of the infidels. My brother, (a name most offensive to the vanity of the Greeks,) accelerate your naval succours, respect your allies, and distrust your flatterers!"

234. When did the Normans establish themselves in Naples and Sicily?

A.D. 1016; an event romantic in its origin, and important in its consequences, both to Italy and the Eastern empire.

235. Who was their first leader?

Count Rainulf; and in the origin of society, pre-eminence of rank is the reward and the proof of superior merit.

236. What was the character of the Normans in the eleventh century?

"The Normans," says Malaterra, "are a cunning and revengeful people; eloquence and dissimulation appear to be their hereditary qualities. They can stoop to flatter; but unless they are curbed by the restraint of law, they indulge the licentiousness of nature and passion. Their princes affect the praise of popular munificence; the people observe the medium, or rather blend the extremes of avarice and prodigality; and, in their eager thirst of wealth and dominion, they despise whatever they possess, and hope whatever they desire. Arms and horses, the luxury of dress, the

exercises of hunting and hawking, are the delight of the Normans; but, on pressing occasions, they can endure with incredible patience the inclemency of every climate, and the toil and abstinence of a military life."

237. Who was Robert Guiscard?

He sprang from a race of Valvassors or Bannerets, of the diocese of Coutances, in the Lower Normandy; the castle of Hauteville was their honourable seat: his father Tancred was conspicuous in the court and army of the duke; and his military service was furnished by ten soldiers or knights.

238. What is said of the trade of Amalphi?

The obscure town of Amalphi was situated seven miles to the west of Salerno, and thirty to the south of Naples. The office of supplying the Western world with the manufactures and productions of the East, was the source of opulence and freedom to the inhabitants.

239. Was the government of Amalphi popular?

Yes, under the administration of a duke, and the supremacy of the Greek emperor.

240. What is said of the inhabitants?

Fifty thousand citizens were numbered in the walls of Amalphi; abundantly supplied with gold and silver, the mariners of Amalphi excelled in the theory and practice of navigation and astronomy.

241. What important discovery is due to their ingenuity?

The compass, which has opened the globe to navigators.

242. How long did their prosperity continue?

Three hundred years.

243. Who reduced the town to poverty?

The Normans were its oppressors, aided by the inhabitants of Pisa.

244. What is said of Roger the Twelfth, son of Tancred?

His valour and ambition equalled that of his elder brother, but his youth, beauty, and elegant manners, engaged the disinterested love of the soldiers and people, and Robert's esteem was succeeded by envy.

245. What events mark the reign of Robert Guiscard?

His Italian conquests, the invasion of the Eastern empire, and the siege of Durazzo, A.D. 1081.

246. What emperor marched in person to the relief of Durazzo?

Alexius, who on his accession found the camp without soldiers, and the treasury without money; but by the vigour and activity of his measures, he in six months assembled an army of seventy thousand men, and performed a march of five hundred miles.

247. What was the conduct of Robert on the report and distant prospect of these formidable numbers?

He assembled a council of his principal officers. "You behold," said he, "your danger; it is urgent and inevitable; the hills are covered with arms and standards, and the emperor of the Greeks is accustomed to wars and triumphs. Obedience and union are our only safety; and I am ready to yield the command to a more worthy leader."

248. Did the officers assure him of their confidence ?

Being unanimously chosen, he continued :—“ Let us trust in the rewards of victory, and deprive cowardice of the means of escape. Let us burn our vessels and our baggage, and give battle on this spot, as if it were the place of our nativity and our burial.”

249. What is related of Gaita the wife of Robert ?

She is painted by the Greeks as a warlike Amazon, a second Pallas, skilled in arms. Though wounded by an arrow she stood her ground, and strove by her exhortation and example, to rally the flying troops.

250. Was the Norman duke as calm in action as he was magnanimous in council ?

Yes ; his powerful voice seconded the appeal of his wife. “ Whither,” he cried aloud, “ whither do ye fly ? Your enemy is implacable ; and death is less grievous than servitude.” The moment was decisive, and the emperor with desperate valour escaped ; despising his subjects and despairing of his fortune, he broke through a squadron of Franks, and sought refuge in the walls of Lychnidus.

251. What emperor besieged Rome three times ?

Henry, king of Germany and Italy, A.D. 1081.

252. By whom was he defeated ?

Robert Guiscard, who in less than three years enjoyed the glory of delivering the pope, and of compelling the two emperors of the East and West to fly before his victorious arms.

253. Was this triumph clouded ?

Yes, by the pillage of the sacred city by his Saracen followers.

254. Where did Robert Guiscard die?

In the island of Cephalonia: an epidemical disease arrested him on his way to Constantinople.

255. Who was the first king of Sicily?

Roger; he was the tenth king of the Latin world, consecrated by Anacletus, and acknowledged by the nations of Europe.

256. Which three kingdoms were more ancient than Charlemagne?

France, England, and Scotland.

257. How were Castille, Arragon, and Navarre, created sovereignties?

By the sword.

258. What invested the kings of Sweden, Denmark, and Hungary, with regal power?

Their baptism. Of these, Hungary alone was honoured or debased by a papal crown.

259. To whom did the sceptre of Roger successively devolve?

His son and grandson, strongly discriminated by the epithets of the Good and the Bad. The first William did not degenerate from the valour of his race, when roused to arms by danger. But his vices and tyranny made him a scourge to the nation.

260. Who succeeded after the peaceful and happy reign of William the Second, a prince equally beloved for his amiability and justice?

Henry the Sixth, son of Frederic Barbarossa, a powerful prince, who had married the daughter of Roger, descended from the Alps, to claim the imperial crown, and the inheritance of his wife. But this was only to

be obtained by the force of arms. Tancred the grandson of the first king, famed for his civil and military virtues, had been unanimously elected, and during the four years of his reign and life, he stood in arms on the farthest verge of the Apuleian frontier, against the powers of Germany: his restitution of the royal captive Constantia, the wife of the emperor, without injury or ransom, may appear to surpass the most liberal measure of policy or reason.

261. When was the final extinction of the Normans?

A.D. 1204. The French monarchs annexed to their crown the duchy of Normandy; the sceptre of her ancient dukes had been transmitted by a granddaughter of William the Conqueror, to the house of Plantagenet; and the adventurous Normans, who had raised so many trophies in France, England, and Ireland, in Apuleia, Sicily, and the East, were lost, either in victory, or servitude, among the vanquished nations.

262. Who was Mahomet the Gaznevide?

One of the greatest of the Turkish princes, who reigned in the eastern provinces of Persia, one thousand years after the birth of Christ.

263. Who gave him the title of Sultan, or Lord and Master?

The ambassador of the caliph of Bagdad.

264. How far did he extend his dominion?

From Transoxiana to the neighbourhood of Ispahan, from the shores of the Caspian to the mouth of the Indus.

265. Name the principal source of his riches and fame.

The holy war against the Gentoos of Hindustan.

266. Where was the Pagoda of Sumnat ?

On the promontory of Guzarat, in the neighbourhood of Diu, one of the last remaining possessions of the Portuguese.

267. How was the temple endowed ?

With the revenue of two thousand villages ; two thousand Brahmins were consecrated to the service of the deity, whom they washed each morning and evening in the water from the distant Ganges. The subordinate ministers consisted of three hundred musicians, three hundred barbers, and five hundred dancing girls, of beauty and noble birth. Three sides of the temple were protected by the ocean, the narrow isthmus was fortified by a natural precipice, and the city and adjacent country were peopled by a nation of fanatics.

268. By whom was this temple destroyed ?

The Moslems, commanded by Mahmud.

269. What did the Brahmins offer for the idol's ransom ?

Ten millions sterling.

270. Was the mystery of their devotion explained ?

Yes, in the statue Mahmud discovered a treasure of pearls and rubies.

271. Why was the sultan's declaration of war against the sovereigns of western Persia abandoned ?

He was disarmed by an epistle of the sultana mother, and delayed his invasion of the dynasty of the Bowides, until her son had attained his majority. "During the life of my husband," said the artful regent, "I was ever apprehensive of your ambition ; he was a prince and a soldier worthy of your arms. He is now no

more ; his sceptre has passed to a woman and a child, and you *dare not* attack their infancy and weakness. How inglorious would be your conquest, how shameful your defeat ! and yet the event of war is in the hand of the Almighty.”

272. What is related remarkable of the last days of Mahomet ?

Avarice was the defect of his character, and this passion was richly satiated ; yet his conduct shortly before his death, evinced the vanity of his possessions, so laboriously won, so dangerously held, and so inevitably lost. He surveyed the vast and numerous chambers of the treasury of Gazna, burst into tears, and again closed the doors, without bestowing any portion of the wealth which he could no longer hope to preserve.

273. What was the amount of his military force ?

One hundred thousand foot, fifty-five thousand horse, and thirteen hundred elephants of battle.

274. Who were the Seljukians ?

The descendants of Seljuk ; they elected his grandson Togrul Beg as their king. He was a valorous and ambitious prince ; he subdued Persia, and protected his caliphs.

275. Who was Alp Arslan ?

Nephew of Togrul, whom he succeeded. Alp Arslau, or “the valiant lion,” displayed the fierceness and the generosity of the royal animal ; he conquered Armenia and Georgia, and defeated and made prisoner the emperor Romanus Diogenes, with whom he nobly treated.

276. When and where did this great king die ?

He was assassinated by Joseph the Carizmian in his tent.

277. What dying admonition did he bequeath to kings?

"In my youth," said Alp Arslan, "I was advised by a sage, to humble myself before God; to distrust my own strength; and never to despise the most contemptible foe. I have neglected these lessons; and my neglect has been deservedly punished. Yesterday, as from an eminence I beheld the numbers, the discipline, and the spirit of my armies, the earth seemed to tremble under my feet; and I said in my heart, Surely thou art the king of the whole world, the greatest and most invincible of warriors. These armies are no longer mine; and in the confidence of my personal strength, I now fall by the hand of an assassin."

278. What was the appearance of this extraordinary man?

His voice and stature commanded reverence; his face was shaded with long whiskers; and his ample turban was fashioned in the shape of a crown: he possessed the virtues of a Turk and a Mussulman.

279. Where were the remains of the sultan deposited?

In the tomb of the Seljukian dynasty, which bore this useful inscription; "O ye who have seen the glory of Alp Arslan exalted to the heavens, repair to Maru, and you will behold it buried in the dust." The annihilation of this inscription, and of the tomb itself, still more forcibly proclaims the instability of human greatness.

280. Did Alp Arslan's eldest son succeed him?

Yes; but before he ascended the throne, he was compelled to draw the scimitar against an uncle, a cousin, and a brother, who disputed his inheritance.

281. What is related of this prince ?

On the eve of the battle which determined his right to reign, he performed his devotions at Thous, before the tomb of the Iman Riza. As the sultan rose from the ground, he asked his vizir, Nizam, who had knelt beside him, what had been the object of his secret petition : "That your arms may be victorious," was the prudent, and probably sincere reply of the minister. "For my part," said the generous Malek, "I implored the Lord of hosts, that he would take from me my life and crown, if my brother be more worthy than myself to reign over the Moslems."

282. How far did he extend his kingdom ?

To the extreme borders of China, and to the west and south, as far as the mountains of Georgia, the neighbourhood of Constantinople, the holy city of Jerusalem, and the spicy groves of Arabia Felix. After the death of Malek, the empire of the Seljukians was divided into the superior dynasty of Persia, and those of Kerman, Syria, and Roum.

283. Name the most interesting conquest of the Seljukian Turks ?

Jerusalem, which soon became the theatre of the nations. Pilgrimages to the Holy Land were stimulated, rather than suppressed by the conquests of the Arabs ; and the chapels and churches, with the clergy of their respective communions, were maintained by Greeks and Latins, Nestorians and Jacobites, Copts, Abyssinians, Armenians, and Georgians.

284. Which of the Fatimite caliphs laboured to destroy the rock of the holy sepulchre ?

Hakem, the third Fatimite caliph, a prince famed for his impiety and despotism.

285. Who invaded the territory of the caliphs?

Atsiz, the Carizmian lieutenant to Malek Shah. The scenes of cruelty and sacrilege that followed these events, excited the chivalry of the devotees of Europe.

286. How long did the house of Seljuk reign in Jerusalem?

Twenty years.

287. To whom was the hereditary command of the holy city and territory entrusted or abandoned?

To the emir Orlok, the chief of a tribe of Turkmans, whose children, after their expulsion from Palestine, formed the dynasties on the borders of Armenia and Assyria.

288. After travelling through these five centuries, what is the state of society?

Instead of liberty, there has grown up the feudal system; instead of knowledge, darkness has overspread the land, and thick darkness the people; a long train of ceremonies and observances has usurped true religion; and the empire of the priest, in the odious sense of the word, has been established over the conscience and the happiness of his blind and unresisting votaries.

289. To what two great evils may we attribute this?

The feudal system, and the papal power.

290. Can history depict this period?

History may exhibit an emperor, like Henry IV. of Germany, barefooted and in penance for three winter days before the palace of the pope; or a feudal lord, like Earl Warren, producing his sword, as the title-deeds of his estate; but history cannot enter into the recesses

of private life, and delineate the hourly sufferings of the people under their uncivilised oppressors. Still less can history describe the more obscure and silent, but not less dreadful effects of ecclesiastical despotism ; and the appalling fact, that the slave had ceased to complain, and the monk to feel, are only proofs of the destruction of the faculties, and mental debasement, which excite stronger feelings of compassion for the unconscious victims.

291. In whom was the feudal power invested ?

In the king and the great lords. In England the influence of the crown was greater than in the rest of Europe.

292. When was this power the less injurious ?

When transferred entirely to the king.

293. What effect had the rise and progress of commerce ?

It improved society by elevating the lower orders ; the immunities and privileges granted to cities and towns, leagued them with the crown, and lessened the power of the barons.

294. As a taste for elegance and luxury increased, was the feudal system weakened ?

A taste for expensive pleasures drained the revenues of the lords, and as they neglected hospitality to their retainers, the number of their followers diminished, and they lost their political power and importance.

295. Did the Crusades affect the manners and state of property at this period ?

Gibbon answers this question by a beautiful illustration. "The conflagration," says he, "which destroyed the tall and barren trees of the forest, gave air and

scope to the vegetation of the nutritive plants of the soil ;" that is, the Crusades destroyed the feudal lords, and brought forward the middle and lower classes ?

296. Mention another cause of the improvement of society.

The fortune by which the crown became, in the great kingdoms of Europe, hereditary.

297. How did this influence society ?

The royal power, proceeding from one accession to another, was the great and permanent reservoir, into which the feudal authority had a constant tendency to flow ; and the power thus collected, was less injurious than when indefinitely multiplied and exhibited in the persons of the barons.

298. In what respect were the Crusades unfavourable ?

While they so happily dispersed the possessions of the great lords, and materially assisted the progress of society, they contributed to the influence of the clergy, by furnishing them with relics and miracles, and with new and multiplied modes of extending and confirming the superstition of the age.

299. What causes of a kindred nature shook the ecclesiastical power of Rome ?

Heresy and knowledge,—causes, at that period of the world, of kindred nature.

300. Was the power of the clergy great ?

Their power was inordinate, and they abused it most grossly ; but it was not always exercised to the injury of society. They diffused knowledge, were the historians of the age—maintained in existence the Latin language—were the only preservers of the remains of

Greek and Roman literature. They every where endeavoured to mitigate and abolish slavery—were lenient landlords to the peasantry—assisted the civil magistrates, and established truces and intermissions to prevent private feuds and civil wars.

301. Was the crown of France hereditary in the time of Hugh Capet?

No; Hénault observes, that he took an early opportunity of having his son crowned at Orleans, which example being followed by his successors, indicates that the right of succession was not established.

302. Give an instance of the independent sovereignty of the barons.

A message of exhortation or command was sent from Hugh Capet to Count de Périgord, which ended with asking him, who made him a count? The reply was, "Those who made you a king."

303. When was the law, called "the truce of the Lord," established?

In the reign of Henry the First. It prohibited private combats, from Wednesday night to Monday evening, because the intermediate days had been consecrated by particular passages in the life and sufferings of our Saviour.

304. Did the feudal system prevail in the reign of Philip the First?

Yes; in 1102, he bought his lands, and did homage for them to his subject the Count de Laucerne.

305. What was the effect of the feudal system in France?

It was so inadequate to produce general order and tranquillity, that Louis le Gros was three years in mas-

tering the castle of one of his barons : but, on the contrary, it was so well calculated for sudden, short, and violent efforts for public defence against an enemy, that the same king, a few years afterwards, was able to assemble two hundred thousand men to oppose the forces of the emperor of Germany.

306. When was the feudal system established in England ?

The subjugation of Britain by the Angles, Tutes, and Saxons successively, was followed by the Norman conquest, which conquest invested the power of legislature in the hands of the victors, who enforced the feudal law in all its rigour.

307. Did England share with the rest of Europe the evil of the papal power ?

Yes ; the pope extended his dominion to this remote island, but the results were not so disastrous as in other nations.

308. What were Edward the Confessor's laws ?

We have no clue to enable us to understand what these celebrated laws were, and can only suppositively trace them in what is called the "Common Law of the Land," or the unwritten collection of maxims and customs which are transmitted from lawyer to lawyer, and from age to age, and have obtained reception and usage among our courts and judges.

309. Is it not more probable that Edward revised and improved the laws of his predecessors, than that he instituted a code of his own ?

The great Alfred was a legislator ; and the laws of Edgar were subject to Edward the Confessor's corrections ; but antiquarians seek in vain for information on the subject of that monarch's own laws.

310. In reading the constitutional history of England, what great leading idea should be formed ?

That there has always been a constant struggle between prerogative and privilege ; these being the points at issue between the crown and the subject, in the annals of the people, from the earliest struggles of the barons down to the revolution in 1688.

311. What is necessary to the existence of civil freedom ?

The existence of executive power ; that is, of prerogative. Men must be protected from the insolence and caprice of the multitude ; whilst popular privileges prevent the rights of society being infringed by the injustice of the few.

312. What may we observe in comparing the two great countries of Europe, France and England ?

That they commenced under the same auspices, but that France lost her constitution, England did not.

313. Who were the legislators of England ?

This is an inquiry which leads to a curious investigation. There was once a Wittenagemote, or great national assembly. No records exist of this parliament, so that we cannot ascertain what were the qualifications that gave a seat in the assembly.

314. When did the Wittenagemote exist ?

Before and after the Conquest, when it ceased, or the name was altered into that of parliament.

315. When were burgesses summoned from the towns ?

At the close of the reign of Henry the Third, afterwards by Edward the First, and again in the reign of Edward the Third. In the last, thanes, or knights of

the shire, were incorporated with the burgesses ; but of this second house of assembly no records exist.

316. Were the principal powers of government invested in this great council ?

It decided on peace and war, and on all military concerns ; it made laws ; and it concurred in the exercise of the royal prerogative on all occasions.

317. Who were the Wites or Sapientes ?

They are referred to in the documents extant ; but who they were cannot be accurately determined. It is subject of controversy whether it was entirely aristocratical or only partly so. This is the great dispute with regard to the origin of the House of Commons.

318. Did the Conquest influence the character of the Wittenagemote ?

It became more and more aristocratic ; its regular meetings less and less frequent, till they at last ceased.

319. To what causes may we assign this change ?

In the progress of the feudal system the smaller landed proprietors either attached themselves to the greater lords, and thus gradually excluded themselves from the Wittenagemote, where those only could meet and deliberate who were considered as equals, or, having inferior property, they absented themselves from the great council, where they were overshadowed by the great barons, and found their opinions disregarded.

320. What followed the difference of wealth ?

Difference of dignity ; and a man might be noble, and yet not one of the *proceres*, unless he had forty hides of land.

321. When were the regular meetings of the Wittenagemote originally held ?

At Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide.

322. Who summoned the occasional meetings?

The king. They became more frequent with the increase of national business.

323. What was the probable result?

That these extraordinary meetings should cease altogether, and with them the political existence of the great council, in which case the constitution of England would have been similar to that of France.

324. What prevented this from being the case?

William having introduced the feudal system, the barons became in consequence members of the national assembly, and their great power rendered it expedient to avoid their displeasure, and secure their assistance: the king, therefore, had recourse to them for their advice, or rather for their public concurrence in the great measures of his government.

325. Was the crown of England transmitted as in France?

No; for many centuries it was worn by usurpers. Among these were the Norman kings, William the Second, Henry the First, and Stephen. Henry the Second obtained it by compromise, John was a usurper, and the rights of Henry the Second, Richard the First, and Henry the Third, were disputed.

326. Did the Wittenagemote decide on peace and war?

Yes; but the moment the members became vassals of the crown, their military service became due to their lord whenever required; and the justice or wisdom of the contest was no longer any part of their concern.

327. Did this transfer the important prerogative of declaring peace and war to the crown?

Yes ; and with the crown it has remained ever since. A prerogative like this once enjoyed was too important to be willingly resigned, and could not forcibly be taken away. It has, therefore, been considered an inheritance of the crown, and has only been controlled or restrained by causes which have grown up into importance as imperceptibly as did the prerogative itself.

328. Was the feudal system fatal to every hope of liberty in England ?

No, not having attained its final maturity by regular growth. It was considered an oppression violently established by a conqueror, and contrasted disadvantageously with the Saxon constitution, which was, consequently, the more regretted ; and as the English cherished its memory, and transmitted its praises, the Normans, considering themselves as belonging to the island, caught their enthusiasm, and advocated laws which were opposed to the rigours they endured.

329. What may we trace to this spirit and habit of thinking ?

The superiority of our constitution ; for which we are indebted to the impression made by the government of our Anglo-Saxon ancestors on the character of our Norman conquerors.

330. Were the elements of the constitution of Spain similar to those of England ?

Spain had the same legislature originally, and might have obtained a free government ; but like France, from various untoward circumstances, it lost its liberties, and has had to descend through different stages of degradation.

331. What were the elements ?

A monarchy, feudal lords, and national assemblies.

332. What was the progress of society in Spain?

It was retarded in civilisation by the wars between the Christians and Moors.

333. Who is the great historian of Spain?

Mariana, "who has infused," says Gibbon, "into his noble work the style and spirit of a Roman classic."

334. When did the Christian princes, who had been driven northwards, rally, and advance against the Mahometans?

In the eleventh century. They were encouraged by the intestine divisions of the Moors, who had, for a few centuries, exhibited their superiority in war, and their magnificence in peace.

335. What objects claim attention at this period?

The siege of Toledo, and the exploits of the Spanish general, Don Roderigo Dias de Bivar.

336. From what event may we date the decline of the power of the Mahometans in Spain?

They never recovered from the battle of Toloso.

337. What king flourished at this period?

Alphonso—more remarkable for his talents as an astronomer than a legislator.

338. What kingdoms was Spain divided into at this time?

The Mahometan kingdom of Granada, and the Christian monarchies of Castille, Arragon, Navarre, and Portugal, distinguished from each other by their respective laws and limits.

339. When did these divisions cease?

With the union of the crowns of Castille and Arragon,

under Ferdinand and Isabella, and the defence, capitulation, and expulsion of the Moors.

340. Had the Christians and Moors equal advantages ?

Yes ; but the north of Spain was more fitted than the south to produce active and hardy warriors. Among the Christians, the warlike ardour of chivalry was advancing : on the contrary, the enthusiasm of the followers of Mahomet had spent itself in conquest ; and the fiercer passions of their nature were lost in the blandishments of pleasure. Their skill in the science of war had not progressed ; and in the Spaniards they had foes who considered themselves the rightful possessors of the country.

341. Did the reign of the Moors obliterate all traces of Gothic legislature ?

No, the laws and manners of the ancient possessors survived, notwithstanding the conquest and the long struggles that followed. The provinces of Spain having been slowly wrested from the Moors, were divided among military leaders ; and the feudal lord in no country appeared more powerful and independent.

342. What remarkable institution was peculiar to Arragon ?

The office of justiza, a supreme judge ; in reality the guardian of the people, and controller of the prince,—every precaution being taken to control, in his turn, the justiza himself, and to provide against the powers of this singular representative of the general interests of the community.

343. Were the Arragonese attached to their form of government ?

Their veneration for this singular constitution was

superstitious, and reconciled them to poverty and the barrenness of their country. The Arragonese Cortes was proud in principle and strong in power.

344. What were the results of this system ?

Continual struggles between the king, justiza, and Cortes ; alike unavailing in removing a radical error.

345. Of what did the Cortes consist ?

Of three estates, and possessed powers analogous to those of our parliaments in England.

346. How, then, did the constitutions of Spain, and other parts of Europe, differ from that of England ?

The powers of the crown were too limited ; and the barons enjoyed prerogatives inconsistent with the order, peace, and prosperity of the community.

347. What was the origin of the first Crusade ?

Peter, a native of Amiens, in Picardy, became an enthusiastic devotee, and, excited by the injuries he received from the Turks, he returned to Europe to advocate the cause of the oppressed Christians. Pope Urban regarded him as a prophet, applauded his project of rousing the martial nations of Europe to bear arms against the Saracens, and promised to support it in a general council, proclaiming the deliverance of the Holy Land.

348. Where was this council held ?

At Clermont, in the territories of the Count of Auvergne, where the pope could brave, with impunity, the resentment of Philip the First.

349. On whom did the Crusaders first wreak their thirst for blood ?

On the Jews, who dwelt in the trading cities of the

Moselle and the Rhine, where they enjoyed the protection of the emperor and the bishops. At Verdun, Treves, Mentz, Spires, and Worms, many thousands of that unhappy people were pillaged and massacred, and experienced a persecution almost equal to that of Hadrian.

350. What was the fate of the first Crusaders ?

The infuriated mob that followed the hermit, Peter, perished before a single city was rescued from the infidels, overwhelmed by the Turkish arrows on the plains of Nice. Their graver and nobler companions, who had not completed their preparations for enterprise, found a pyramid of bones to inform them where their more zealous comrades had fallen.

351. Who were the chiefs of the first Crusade ?

The first rank is justly due to Godfrey of Bouillon, a worthy representative of Charlemagne.

352. By whom was he accompanied ?

His two brothers, Eustace, the elder, and Baldwin.

353. Of what was the confederate force that marched under his banner composed ?

Fourscore thousand foot, and ten thousand horse.

354. Did any of the great sovereigns of Europe embark their persons in the first Crusade ?

No, the emperor Henry the Fourth was not disposed to obey the summons of the pope ; Philip the First of France was occupied by his pleasures ; William Rufus of England by a recent conquest ; the kings of Spain were engaged in a domestic war against the Moors ; and the northern monarchs of Scotland, Denmark, Sweden, and Poland, were yet strangers to the passions and interests of the south.

355. Name some of the other chiefs?

Hugh, Count of Vermandois, surnamed the Great, the brother of the King of France; Robert, Duke of Normandy, the eldest son of William the Conqueror; Robert, Count of Flanders (a royal province which, in this century, gave queens to France, England, and Denmark,) Robert of Flanders was surnamed the Sword and Lance of the Christians; and Stephen, Count of Chartres, of Blois, and of Troyes, one of the richest princes of the age, the number of his castles being compared to the three hundred and sixty-five days of the year. Stephen was chosen president of the council for his literary talents and eloquence.

356. Who assumed command of the Crusaders in the south of France?

Adhemar, bishop of Puy, the pope's legate, and Raymond, Count of St. Giles and Thoulouse, who had the prouder titles of Duke of Narbonne and Marquis of Provence.

357. Who exercised the coolest policy and ambition?

Bohemond, son of Robert Guiscard, famous for his double victory over the Greek emperor, though reduced by his father's will to the principality of Tarentum. This Norman chief was awakened by the rumour and passage of the French pilgrims.

358. Who accompanied this veteran general?

Several princes of the Norman race; and his cousin, Tancred, an accomplished and virtuous knight, shared the command.

359. What was the military character of this age of chivalry?

The service of the infantry was degraded to the plebeians, the cavalry formed the strength of the armies,

and the honourable name of “*miles*,” or soldier, was confined to the gentlemen who served on horseback, and were invested with the character of knighthood.

360. Who attended the knights to the field?

Their faithful squires, youths of equal birth and similar hopes. Their archers, and six men at arms, and four, or five, or six soldiers, were computed as the furniture of complete lances.

361. When did the princes march to Constantinople?

A.D. 1096.

362. How were they accompanied?

When the leaders were relieved by the absence of the plebeian multitude, they encouraged each other to perform their vows; and, accompanied by their wives and sisters, taking with them their portable treasures in bars of silver and gold, and their equipages of hounds and hawks, they assumed the cross for the deliverance of the holy sepulchre.

363. What number of Crusaders would have migrated from Europe to Asia, had all who took their cross accomplished their vow?

Six millions.

364. What loss did the first Crusade sustain?

The savage countries of Hungary and Bulgaria were whitened with their bones; their vanguard was cut in pieces by the Turkish sultan; and the loss of the first adventure, by the sword, or climate, or fatigue, amounted to three hundred thousand men.

365. Was this comparatively a small number?

Yes, for the myriads that survived pressed forward on their march to the Holy Land in a mass so terrific

as to be a subject of astonishment to themselves and the Greeks.

366. How does the Princess Anne, the historian of the times, describe this pilgrimage?

The daughter of Alexius exclaims, energetically, that Europe was loosened from its foundations, and hurled against Asia.

367. Of what nations were the troops?

Natives of France. The Low Countries, the banks of the Rhine, and Apuleia, sent a powerful reinforcement. Some bands of adventurers were drawn from Spain, Lombardy, and England; and even from the bogs and mountains of Ireland and Scotland.

368. What events followed?

The siege of Nice; the battle of Dorylaeum; the principality of Edessa, founded by Baldwin; and the siege of Antioch.

369. When did the knights of the cross besiege Jerusalem?

A.D. 1099.

370. How was the siege directed?

Against the northern and western sides of the city. Godfrey of Bouillon erected his standard on the first swell of Mount Calvary: to the left, as far as St. Stephen's Gate, the line of attack was continued by Tancred and the two Roberts; and Count Raymond established his quarters from the citadel to the foot of Mount Sion, which was no longer included within the precincts of the city.

371. When was the holy city rescued from the Mahometans?

Four hundred and sixty years after the conquest of Omar. On Friday, at three, the hour of the passion, Godfrey of Bouillon stood victorious on the walls of Jerusalem.

372. Was the reign of Godfrey of Bouillon peaceful ?

No, the judicious government of the defender and baron of the holy sepulchre was interrupted by a summons to the field by the approach of the vizir or sultan of Egypt.

373. Were the Fatimites defeated ?

In the battle of Ascalon, A.D. 1099, they were totally overthrown.

374. What force did the new king retain for the defence of Palestine ?

The gallant Tancred, with three hundred knights, and two thousand foot soldiers.

375. Did Godfrey extend his dominions ?

Yes, until they equalled the possessions of the ancient princes of Judah and Israel.

376. Enumerate his conquests.

The maritime cities of Laodicea, Tripoli, Tyre, and Ascalon, and the range of sea-coast from Scanderoon to the borders of Egypt. The counts of Edessa and Tripoli owned themselves vassals of the king of Jerusalem, and the Latins reigned beyond the Euphrates.

377. What was the assize of Jerusalem ?

A code composed by Godfrey of Bouillon, attested by the king, the patriarch, and the Viscount of Jerusalem, and deposited in the holy sepulchre.

378. How were the justice and freedom of the constitution maintained ?

By two tribunals of unequal dignity, the court of peers, and the court of burgesses.

379. Who undertook the second Crusade ?

Conrad the Third, and Louis the Seventh, A.D. 1147.

380. Who led the third Crusade ?

Frederic Barbarossa ; A.D. 1189.

381. Whom did Conrad summon to join him ?

The kings of Poland and Bohemia, with the nations from Britain to Rome ; so numerous a host, that after numbering nine hundred thousand, the Byzantines ceased the computation.

382. Was the third Crusade less numerous ?

It was numbered six hundred thousand : of these, fifteen thousand knights and as many squires were the flower of German chivalry ; and sixty thousand horse, and one hundred thousand foot, were mustered by the emperor in the plains of Hungary.

383. What curious troop rode under the banners of Conrad ?

A troop of women, in the armour of men. The chief of these Amazons, from her gilt spurs and buskins, obtained the epithet of the golden-footed dame.

384. Were crusades obstinately continued ?

The perseverance of the pilgrim warriors may excite our pity and admiration,—that so much zeal should have existed, and that zeal have been so wofully misapplied.

385. How frequent were these emigrations ?

For a period of two centuries after the council of Clermont, they took place each succeeding spring and summer.

386. How many great armaments or crusades were there?

Seven.

387. In what year did St. Bernard execute his mission?

A.D. 1091.

388. What was the progress of the Mamelukes?

After the loss of Jerusalem, the commanders of the faithful could only weep. Syria was a fugitive; Bagdad mourned in the dust;—the Cadhi Zeineddin of Damascus tore his beard in the caliph's presence; and the whole divan shed tears at his melancholy tale. The commanders themselves were captives in the hands of the Turks.

389. Who was Noureddin?

The valiant son of Zenghi, a Turk; he gradually united the Mahometan powers; added the kingdom of Damascus to that of Aleppo, waged successful war against the Christians of Syria, and reigned from the Tigris to the Nile.

390. When was Egypt conquered by the Turks?

A.D. 1163.

391. Who was the last of the Fatimite caliphs?

Adhed, A.D. 1171.

392. When did Great Saladin reign?

From A.D. 1171, to A.D. 1193. The genuine virtues of Saladin, commanded the esteem of the Christians; the emperor of Germany gloried in his friendship, and the Greek emperor solicited his alliance.

393. To whom did the sceptre of Godfrey of Bouillon devolve?

To Melisenda, daughter of the second Baldwin, and

her husband Fulk, Count of Anjou, the father, by a former marriage, of the English Plantagenets.

394. When did Saladin take the country and city of Jerusalem?

A.D. 1187.

395. When was the siege of Acre?

A.D. 1191.

396. What two youthful kings distinguished themselves at the taking of Acre?

Philip Augustus, and Richard Plantagenet; the first English and French kings who fought under the same banners.

397. What was the fate of Richard, after his departure from Palestine?

He embarked for Europe, where he long pined in captivity, and found a premature grave.

398. When did Frederic, grandson of Barbarossa, make a crusade?

A.D. 1228.

399. Who was St. Louis?

Louis the Ninth, king of France; the prince of the middle ages who most successfully laboured to restore the prerogatives of the crown. Twenty-eight years after his death, he was canonised at Rome.

400. Who shared his captivity in Egypt?

The noble and gallant Joinville.

401. When was Damietta taken by the French?

A.D. 1249.

402. What ransom did Touran Shaw demand for Louis?

The restitution of Damietta, and four hundred thousand pieces of gold. His soldiers received their liberty, and the generous victor sent his prisoner a robe of honour.

403. Where did Louis the Ninth die?

Before Tunis, in the seventh Crusade, A.D. 1270.

404. Who were the Mamelukes of Egypt?

Sultans of the Baharite and Borgite dynasties, and their forces. These Mamelukes numbered twenty-five thousand; they held the treaty of Selim the First, with the republic, as the great charter of their liberties, and had twenty-four beys, or military chiefs, who were succeeded, not by their sons, but by their servants.

405. When was Antioch lost?

A.D. 1268. It was occupied and ruined by Bondondar, sultan of Egypt and Syria.

406. What maritime towns successively fell into the hands of the Mahometans?

Laodicea, Gabala, Tripoli, Berytus, Sidon, Tyre, and Jaffa, and the stronger castles of the Hospitalers and Templars.

407. What English king defended Acre from the invasion of the Moguls?

Edward the First, during the lifetime of his father Henry: he assumed the cross; and at the head of a thousand soldiers, the future conqueror of Wales and Scotland delivered Acre from a siege.

408. When did the Moslems retake Acre and the Holy Land?

A.D. 1291, under the command of the sultan Khalil.

409. What was the state of Constantinople and the Byzantine court in the twelfth century?

The revolution which dethroned Andronicus, exalted Isaac Angelus, a prince descended from the same imperial dynasty.

410. Who usurped the sovereignty of the empire of the Greeks?

Alexius Angelus, brother of Isaac.

411. Where were the first foundations of Venice laid?

In the island of Rialto; where the Venetians had sought obscurity, when they fled from the fallen cities of the continent.

412. In what year did the French form an alliance with the Venetians?

A.D. 1201, in the reign of Henry Dandole, Duke of Venice.

413. What was the object of this alliance?

The deliverance of Jerusalem, a Crusade formed by the French; and these new allies left Venice, A.D. 1202.

414. What city was the first besieged?

Zara, a strong city of the Sclavonian coast, which had renounced its allegiance to Venice, and implored the protection of the king of Hungary.

415. Name the prince who sought an alliance with these Crusaders.

Alexius, the Greek prince, who desired their assistance for his own restoration and his father's deliverance.

416. In what year was Constantinople besieged and conquered ?

A.D. 1203, July 18th ; when Isaac Angelus and his son Alexius were restored to the throne.

417. Who deposed Alexius and his father ?

Mourzoule, a prince of the house of Ducas, was the leader of the rebellion against the king.

418. When was the second siege ?

A.D. 1204.

419. Was the city abandoned to pillage ?

The victors sacked the capital of its treasures ; plundered its temples, and destroyed the works of art and libraries by fire.

420. Between what nations was the empire divided ?

The French and Venetians.

421. Whom did they elect emperor ?

Baldwin.

422. How were the Greek provinces divided ?

One-fourth only was added to the Greek emperor's domain, and the remainder was appropriated by the Venetians.

423. Who was Theodore Lascaris ?

Emperor of Nice, A.D. 1204. He was signalised in the sieges of Constantinople, and elected by the soldiers as their king. He established his residence at Nice.

424. When was the Bulgarian war ?

A.D. 1205. Baldwin I. was defeated and made prisoner, and afterwards barbarously murdered by his captors.

425. Who succeeded Baldwin?

His brother Henry; a prince whose character was not unequal to his arduous situation. He had fought valiantly at the siege of Constantinople, and beyond the Hellespont; and his courage was tempered with a degree of prudence and mildness unknown to his impetuous brother.

426. Where did Henry die?

At Thessalonica, in the defence of that kingdom and the infant son of his friend Boniface.

427. Who succeeded him?

Peter of Courtenay, Count of Auxerre, husband of Yolande, the sister of the deceased monarch. He passed the Alps with the assistance of Philip Augustus, and pope Honorius the Third crowned him emperor; but by his untimely death the throne was vacant, though long ignorance of his fate delayed the proclamation of a new emperor.

428. To whom did the crown descend?

To the princes, sons of Yolande and Peter the elder; Philip, preferring the substance of a marquisate to the shadow of an empire, resigned all claim in favour of his brother Robert, who was crowned by the patriarch in the cathedral of St. Sophia.

429. Who governed during the minority of Baldwin, the third son of Yolande?

John of Brienne, to whom the public voice and the judgment of Philip Augustus had given Mary, queen of Jerusalem, the daughter of Isabella and Conrad of Montferrat, and the grand-daughter of Almeric.

430. When did the Greeks recover Constantinople?

A.D. 1261.

431. Name the two characters who replanted and upheld the Roman standard at Nice in Bithynia ?

Theodore Lascaris, and his son-in-law, John Ducas Vataces.

432. Who succeeded ?

Theodore Lascaris the Second, and his son.

433. To whom did the throne revert ?

Michael Palaeologus, the most illustrious in birth and merit of the Greek nobles, who afterwards shared the honours of the purple with his son Andronicus.

434. What prince subdued Naples and Sicily ?

Charles of Anjou. He defeated Mainfroy with the chivalry of France, on his way to the Holy Land, A.D. 1266.

435. What were the Sicilian vespers ?

A promiscuous massacre of eight thousand French, which took place in the vigil of Easter, A.D. 1282, during the revolt of Sicily.

436. After the peace, what was the result ?

Many thousands of Genoese, Catalans, &c., who had fought by sea and land, under the standards of Anjou and Arragon, were blended into one nation, by the resemblance of their manners and interests ; from this period the island of Sicily and the continental territories of Naples (one-third of Italy) were known under the appellation of the Two Sicilies.

437. To whom was Athens assigned, when the partition of the empire of Greece took place ?

To Otho de la Roche, a noble warrior of Burgundy, with the title of Great Duke ; he acquired great wealth and renown, but after his death, an heiress of the

family married into the house of Brienne, an event which was followed, in the reign of Walter de Brienne, by war with the Catalans, who defeated the duke, and for fourteen years were the terror of the Grecian states.

438. Name the two Greek emperors who waged three civil wars?

Andronicus the elder, and his grandson, Andronicus the younger.

439. Were these disputes ruinous to the empire?

The annual revenue amounted to five hundred thousand pounds; yet the richest of the sovereigns of Christendom was incapable of maintaining three thousand horse and twenty galleys, to resist the destructive progress of the Turks. "How different," said the younger Andronicus, "is my situation from that of the son of Philip! Alexander might complain, that his father would leave him nothing to conquer. Alas! my grandsire will leave me nothing to lose."

440. Name the two wives of the younger Andronicus.

The first, named Agnes, the Irene of Greece, was daughter of the Duke of Brunswick; the second, Jane, daughter of the great Amadée, and sister of the Count of Savoy, was crowned in St. Sophia, with all the majesty of a Roman empress. She was baptized the more orthodox appellation of Anne; and at the nuptial feast, the Greeks and Italians vied with each other in the martial exercises of tilts and tournaments. Her retinue was composed of knights and ladies.

441. Was the hereditary succession uninterrupted?

No; the son of Andronicus being a minor at the time of his father's death, John Cantacuzenus was deputed regent. Conspiracies afterwards increased the

expediency of his assuming the purple, which had been urged by his friend, the late emperor, on his death-bed.

442. What occasioned the war between the Genoese and the Venetians and Greeks?

The insolence and threats of the Genoese, who refused to do homage to the emperor Cantacuzenus, to whom they were vassals and subjects.

443. In what year did the Genoese gain the victory over the Greeks and Venetians?

A.D. 1352.

444. To what may we attribute their success?

To the superiority and size of their war-ships.

445. What two naval commanders distinguished themselves in this battle?

Pisani and Doria, both of illustrious families.

446. How long did the contest between the Roman empire and the Genoese continue?

One hundred and thirty years.

447. What terminated it?

The factions of the Genoese. These internal disturbances obliged them to seek for domestic peace under the protection of a foreign lord, the Duke of Milan, or the French king.

448. What was the result?

The spirit of commerce survived that of conquest; and the colony of Pera still awed the capital, and navigated the Euxine, till it was involved by the Turks in the final servitude of Constantinople itself.

449. With what are the rise and progress of the Ottomans connected?

The most important events of modern history, founded on a previous knowledge of the great eruption of the Moguls and Tartars, whose rapid conquests may be compared to the primitive convulsions of nature which have agitated and altered the surface of the globe.

450. Who was Zingis Khan?

First emperor of the Moguls and Tartars, A.D. 1206. His private name was Temugin.

451. What followed his first military league?

He was proclaimed great khan or emperor of the Moguls and Tartars, and received the title of Zingis, or “most great,” supposed to confer a right to universal conquest and dominion.

452. When did he first attempt to reign?

At the age of thirteen he succeeded his father, who had reigned over thirteen hordes, composed of forty thousand families. Above two-thirds refused to pay tithes or obedience to his son; and the youthful Temugin fought a battle against his rebellious subjects.

453. Was the future conqueror of Asia defeated?

Yes; but in his fortieth year he had established his fame and dominion over the circumjacent tribes.

454. Were the laws of Zingis adapted to the condition of his subjects?

His code preserved domestic peace, and enforced the expediency of foreign hostility. The punishments awarded for crime were such as to insure justice and humanity among the fiercest of men.

455. What was the legislature with respect to succession?

The future election of the great khan was vested in the princes of his family, and the heads of the tribes.

456. What were the pursuits of this wild people?

The nation was held sacred from all servile labours, which were abandoned to slaves and strangers; and every labour was considered servile but that of arms.

457. What most excites our wonder in the institutions of Zingis?

His religion,—the faith he propagated in the midst of idolatry; the first and only article of which was the existence of one God, the Author of all good, who fills, by his presence, the heavens and earth, which he has created by his power.

458. Was the reason of Zingis informed by books?

No, the khan could neither read nor write; and, excepting the Igours, the Moguls and Tartars were as illiterate as their sovereign.

459. When did Zingis invade China?

A.D. 1210.

460. How was his embassy received at Pekin?

The court was astonished by an embassy from its former vassal, who, in the tone of the king of nations, exacted the tribute and obedience which he had paid, and who affected to treat the “son of heaven” with contempt.

461. How did the Chinese disguise their fears?

By sending a haughty answer in defiance.

462. What was the consequence?

Innumerable squadrons marched to their frontier, and pierced on all sides the feeble rampart of the Great Wall.

463. How was this invasion supported?

By the revolt of a hundred thousand Khitans, who guarded the frontier. Ninety cities were stormed before a treaty was concluded.

464. What did Zingis demand as the price of his retreat?

A princess of China, three thousand horses, five hundred youths, five hundred maidens, and a tribute of gold and silk.

465. What was the effect of his second attack?

The Chinese emperor was compelled to retire beyond the Yellow River to a more southern residence.

466. Describe the siege of Yen-King?

Yeu-King, an ancient city, whose ruins still appear some furlongs from the more modern Pekin, or "court of the north," was reduced by a long siege to a state of dreadful famine. The inhabitants devoured their fellow-citizens; and when their ammunition was spent, discharged ingots of gold and silver from their engines.

467. How did the Moguls effect an entrance?

They introduced a mine to the centre of the capital; and the conflagration of the palace lasted for more than thirty days.

468. What did Zingis gain by this war and the domestic factions of the empire?

The five northern provinces of China.

469. What rash and inhuman act provoked Zingis to war with the emperor of the Moslems?

A caravan of three ambassadors and one hundred and fifty merchants was arrested and murdered at Otrar, by the command of Mohammed; nor was it until after a demand and denial of justice, till he had

prayed and fasted three nights on a mountain, that the Mogul emperor appealed to the judgment of God and his sword.

470. What memorable battle was fought on the plains that extend to the north of the Sihon or Jaxartes?

Seven hundred thousand Moguls and Tartars are said to have marched under the standard of Zingis and his four sons, to the plains, where they encountered four hundred thousand soldiers of the sultan; and in the first battle, which was suspended by the night, one hundred and sixty thousand Carizmians were slain.

471. Can we compare European battles with the numbers that have fought and fallen in Asia?

No, the victories we boast sink into petty skirmishes contrasted with the conflicting legions of the East.

472. What was the conduct of Mohammed?

He was astonished by the numbers and the valour of his enemies; and speedily withdrawing his troops, distributed them in the frontier towns, trusting that the barbarians, invincible in the field, would be repulsed by the length and difficulty of so many regular sieges.

473. Had the prudence of Zingis provided for this extremity?

Yes; he had formed a body of Chinese engineers, skilled in the mechanic arts; informed, perhaps, of the secret of gunpowder, and capable, under his discipline, of attacking a foreign country with more vigour and success than they had defended their own.

474. Do the Persian historians commemorate the sieges and conquests of Zingis?

They mention the taking of Otrar, Congende, Bochara, Samarcand, Carizme, Herat, Meron, Nisa-

bour, Balch, and Candahar, and the subjugation of the rich and populous countries of Transoxiana, Carizme, and Chorasan.

475. Who governed the Moguls after the death of Zingis?

His four sons, illustrious by birth and merit, exercised under their father's government the principal offices of peace and war. Tonshi was his great huntsman, Zagatai his judge, Octai his minister, and Tuli his general. After the death of Zingis, Octai was unanimously elected great khan, the four brothers being united for the public interest.

476. On whom did the government of the empire devolve?

Gayuk, the son of Octai; he was succeeded by his cousins, the sons of Tuli, in whose reigns the Moguls subdued almost all Asia, and a large portion of Europe.

477. How was China divided before the invasion of Zingis?

Into the northern and southern empires, Cathay and Mangi.

478. What characterised the Chinese in war?

Passive courage: they seldom met their enemies in the open field, but presented an endless succession of cities to storm, and of millions to slaughter.

479. Was gunpowder used by the Chinese?

Yes, in cannons and bombs. The sieges were conducted by the Mahometans and Franks, under the standard of Cublai.

480. In what year did the invaders surround the fleet of the "Song?"

The fleet of the "Song," or sovereign of the empire, being captured, the last champion of the Mangi leaped into the waves with his infant emperor in his arms, exclaiming, "It is more glorious to die a prince than to live a slave." A hundred thousand Chinese imitated his example; and the whole empire, from Tonkin to the Great Wall, submitted to the dominion of Cublai.

481. Did Cublai's ambitious expedition to Japan succeed?

No; his attempt at conquest was foiled, his fleet was twice shipwrecked, and the lives of a hundred thousand Chinese and Moguls were sacrificed.

482. What kingdoms did Cublai subdue?

Corea, Tonkin, Cochinchina, Pegu, Bengal and Thibet. He explored the Indian Ocean with a fleet of a thousand ships.

483. Which of the Mogul emperors achieved the conquest of Persia and the empire of the caliphs?

Holagon Khan, grandson of Zingis.

484. Whom did Octai entrust with the command of the fifteen hundred thousand Moguls and Tartars for the invasion of the remote countries of the West?

His nephew, Baton, the son of Tuli.

485. Describe their route.

They crossed the great rivers of Asia and Europe, the Volga, the Kama, the Don and Borysthenes, the Vistula, and Danube; ravaged the plains of Turkestan and Kipzac, the kingdoms of Astracan and Cazan, Georgia and Circassia. They spread from Livonia to the Black Sea, and destroyed Kiow and Moscow. From the permanent conquest of Russia, they turned to the invasion of Poland; the cities of Lublin and Cracow

were reduced ; and on the shores of the Baltic, in the battle of Lignitz, they defeated the Duke of Silesia, the Polish Palatines, and the great master of the Teutonic order, and filled nine sacks with the right ears of the slain.

486. Who was king of Hungary when Batou invaded that country ?

Bela. He assembled the military force of his counts and bishops ; but civil dissensions alienated the people from their national interests ; and the whole country, north of the Danube, was lost in a day.

487. What was the effect of this devastation on the Latin world ?

A Russian fugitive carried the alarm to Sweden ; and the remote nations of the Baltic trembled at the approach of the Tartars. The invasion of these Scythian shepherds was the most dreadful visitation to Europe since the inroads of the Arabs.

488. How did the Roman pontiff attempt to appease and convert these invincible pagans ?

By a mission of Franciscan and Dominican friars.

489. How were the monks received ?

The khan replied to their message of conciliation, that the sons of God and of Zingis were invested with a power to subdue and extirpate the nations ; and that the pope would be involved in the universal destruction, unless he visited in person, and as a suppliant, the royal horde.

490. What mode of defence did the Emperor Frederic the Second embrace ?

He wrote letters to the kings of France and England, and the princes of Germany, representing the common

danger, and urging them to arm their vassals in a just and rational crusade.

491. How was the town of Neustadt in Austria defended?

By fifty Knights and twenty Crossbows: they raised the siege on the appearance of the German army; and the valour of the Franks awed their Tartar foes.

492. Where did Sheibani Khan, the brother of Baton, lead his horde of fifteen thousand families?

Into the frozen regions of the north; his descendants reigned at Tobolskoy above three centuries, till the Russian conquest.

493. Did the spirit of enterprise, which penetrated the wilds of Siberia, lead to the discovery of the Icy Sea?

Yes; by pursuing the course of the Obi and Yenisei, the Moguls entered the neighbourhood of the Polar circle; and fifteen years after the death of Zingis, they made known to the rest of the world the name and manners of the Samoyedes, who dwelt in subterraneous huts, and derived their furs and their food from the sole occupation of hunting.

494. What is said of the successors of Zingis?

Like the first caliphs, they were contented to be the authors of the mighty mischief, and their word was the sword of death in China, Syria, and Poland, though they did not appear in person at the head of their victorious armies.

495. What were the characteristics of this people?

Simplicity and greatness. On the banks of the Onon and Selinga the royal or *golden* horde banqueted on roasted sheep and mare's milk, whilst they distri-

buted in one day five hundred waggons of gold and silver.

496. What kings and princes acknowledged the supreme power of the khan?

The life and reign of the great dukes of Russia, the kings of Georgia and Armenia, the sultans of Iconium, and the emirs of Persia, were decided by the frown and smile of the great Mogul; and the ambassadors and princes of Europe and Asia were compelled to undertake the distant and laborious pilgrimage of Caracorum.

497. What circumstance was the signal for a change of manners?

The removal of Octai and Mangon from a tent to a house; an example followed by the princes of their family and the great officers of the empire. The boundless forest was forsaken, and their new habitations were enclosed in parks; painting and sculpture decorated their dwellings; and the superfluous treasures were cast in fountains, basons, and statues of massive silver. The artists of China and Paris vied with each other in the service of the great khan. Guillaume Boucher, orfèvre de Paris, executed a silver tree, supported by four lions, and ejecting four different liquors.

498. Describe Caracorum.

It was gradually ennobled by the residence of the sons and grandsons of Zingis. It contained two streets, the one of Chinese mechanics, and the other Mahometan traders; one Nestorian church, two moschs, and twelve temples of various idols.

499. Why did the Moguls and Tartars adopt the form of government and customs of China?

Cublai the lieutenant, and afterwards successor of

Mangon, had been educated in that country, and as the northern, and by degrees the southern empire of China submitted to his sway, the army dissolved itself in the vast and populous country, became a supporter of its political system, and submitted to the laws, the fashions, and the prejudices of the vanquished people.

500. Name the improvements of the reign of Cublai.

Letters and commerce, peace and justice, were restored; the great canal was opened from Nankin to the capital Pekin, where the emperor fixed his residence, and displayed in his court the magnificence of the greatest monarch of Asia.

501. When were the Mogul emperors expelled from China?

A.D. 1368, the dynasty of the Yuen, the native Chinese, disgusted with, and oppressed by a weak and selfish legislature, threw off the Tartar yoke.

502. What other great divisions took place in the Mogul empire?

The khans of Russia and the Dashté, or plain of Kipsac, (which extended from the Jaik to the Borys-thenes, on either side of the Volga, and contained the primitive name and nation of the Cossacks,) the khans of Zagatai or Transoxiana, and the khans of Iran or Persia, presuming on their distance and power, refused obedience, and scorned to accept a sceptre or a title from the unworthy successors of Cublai.

503. What became of these nations?

They retained their pastoral simplicity, excepting where their position placed them under the influence of the great cities of Asia; and after some hesitation between the Gospel and the Koran, they adopted for their brethren the Arabs and Persians, and renounced

all intercourse with the ancient Moguls, who had forsaken their own faith for the idolatry of China.

504. Did Baton attack Constantinople?

No; he was diverted from the siege, and made a voluntary and glorious retreat from the Danube.

505. Why did his brother Borga abandon the Byzantine war, after leading his victorious armies through Bulgaria and Thrace?

To visit Novgorod, where he numbered the inhabitants and regulated the tributes of Russia.

506. To what may we attribute the decline of the Mogul khans of Persia?

The death of Cazan, one of the greatest and most accomplished princes of the house of Zingis, removed the salutary control which had checked the depredations, and preserved the peace of the Turkish frontiers, and the decline of Mogul discipline gave place for the rise and progress of the Ottoman empire.

507. Name the origin of the Ottoman Turks.

Gelaleddin, the sultan of Carizme, returned from India, after the retreat of Zingis, to the possession and defence of his Persian kingdoms. In eleven years, he fought in person fourteen battles; but being at last defeated by the Moguls, he perished in the mountains of Kurdistan. His veteran and adventurous army of Carizmians, or Corasmians, was dissolved after his death; the bolder and more powerful chiefs invaded Syria and Jerusalem; the less enterprising entered the service of Aladin, the sultan of Iconium. Of these was Orthogrul, whose father, Soliman Shah, was drowned in the Euphrates. Orthogrul became the soldier and subject of Aladin, and established at Surgut a camp of four hundred families, or tents, which he

governed fifty-two years. He was the father of Athman, an appellation corrupted by the Turks to Othman, a caliph whose virtues justly entitled him to the position he held, and whose actions were worthy of the first prince of the Ottoman line.

508. Who succeeded Othman ?

His son Orchan, who had, during his father's life, conquered Prusa, in which city he afterwards built a mosch, a college, and a hospital.

509. Name some of Orchan's conquests after he ascended the throne.

The cities of Nice and Nicosuedia yielded to his siege ; and his small but chosen band subdued the whole province or kingdom of Bithynia. The Emperor Andronicus the younger, was vanquished and wounded by the son of Othman ; and the generous conduct of the conqueror, won from the Christians a tribute of praise to the justice and clemency of a reign, which claimed the voluntary attachment of the Turks of Asia.

510. When was Anatolia divided among the Turkish emirs ?

A.D. 1300.

511. When were the provinces of Asia lost, and the seven churches destroyed ?

A.D. 1312.

512. Who were the knights of Rhodes ?

The order of St. John of Jerusalem, established A.D. 1310. Under their discipline the island emerged into fame and opulence ; and for two centuries, this bulwark of Christendom provoked and repelled by land and sea, the arms of the Turks and Saracens.

513. When did the Turks first enter Europe ?

A.D. 1341. The divisions of the Greeks ended in their final ruin ; Cantacuzene, in defence of his life and honour, called to his aid the public enemies of his country and religion. The prince of Ionia assembled at Smyrna a fleet of three hundred vessels, with an army of twenty-nine thousand men ; sailed in the depth of winter, and cast anchor at the mouth of the Hebrus. From thence, with a chosen band of two thousand Turks, he marched along the banks of the river, and rescued the empress, who was besieged in Demotica by the wild Bulgarians.

514. Name the Christian princess, Orchan married.

Theodora, the daughter of Cantacuzene : this alliance was considered advantageous to both empires, and the Greek clergy connived at the marriage with a secretary of Mahomet. But the friendship of Orchan was subservient to his religion and interest ; and in the Genoese war, he joined without a blush the enemies of Cantacuzene.

515. When did the Ottomans establish themselves in Europe ?

A.D. 1353.

516. Who was Soliman ?

Son of Orchan ; he engaged in the civil wars of Romania, and rebuilt Gallipoli, the key of the Hellespont, after it had been destroyed by an earthquake. Soliman was killed by a fall of his horse, whilst practising in the field the exercise of the jerid. The aged Orchan wept, and expired on the tomb of his valiant son.

517. Did the deaths of Orchan and Soliman free the Greeks from the Turkish yoke ?

No, the Turkish scimitar was wielded with the same

spirit by Amurath the First, second son of Orchan. He subdued, without resistance, the whole province of Romania, or Thrace, from the Hellespont to Mount Hæmus. Adrianople was his royal seat of government and religion in Europe. Constantinople, whose decline is almost coeval with her foundation, had often been assaulted with barbarians from the east and west ; but never, till this fatal hour, had the Greeks been surrounded, both in Asia and Europe, by the arms of the same hostile monarchy.

518. Name some of the nations Amurath invaded.

The Sclavonian nations between the Danube and the Adriatic, the Bulgarians, Servians, Bosnians, and Albanians ; and these warlike tribes, who had so often insulted the majesty of the empire, were repeatedly broken by his destructive inroads.

519. What characterised the natives of these countries ?

Hardiness of mind and body. They did not possess wealth, nor were they famed for commerce ; but they became the firmest and most faithful supporters of the Ottoman greatness.

520. What politic measure effected this ?

The vizir of Amurath reminded his sovereign, that according to the Mahometan law, he was entitled to a fifth part of the spoil and captives ; and that the duty might easily be levied, if vigilant officers were stationed at Gallipoli, to watch the passage, and to select for his use the stoutest and most beautiful of the Christian youth. The edict was proclaimed, and many thousands of the European captives were educated in religion and arms.

521. Describe the ceremony observed for consecrating and naming the new militia.

A dervish, standing in the front of their ranks, stretched the sleeve of his gown over the head of the foremost soldier, and pronounced this benediction, “ Let them be called Janizaries, (*Yengi cheri*, or new soldiers,) may their countenance be ever bright! their hand victorious! their sword keen! May their spear always hang over the head of their enemies! and wheresoever they go, may they return with a *white face!*” The last invocation being complimentary among the Turks.

522. Was this speech verified?

Yes; the haughty troop, whose organisation claimed this origin, became the terror of nations, and sometimes of the sultans themselves.

523. What lessened their influence?

The order and weapons of modern tactics, with which their tumultuary array was incapable of contending. Their valour declined, and their discipline relaxed; but, at the time of their institution, they possessed a decisive superiority in war; since a regular body of infantry, in constant exercise and pay, was not maintained by any of the princes of Christendom.

524. When were the league and independence of the Slavonian tribes finally crushed?

In the battle of Corsova, the Janizaries fought with the zeal of proselytes against their *idolatrous* countrymen.

525. Relate the circumstances of the death of Amurath.

As the conqueror walked over the field, he observed, that the greater part of the slain consisted of beardless youths, and listened to the flattering reply of his vizir, that age and wisdom would have taught them not to

oppose his irresistible arms ; but the sword of his Janizaries could not defend him from the dagger of despair : a Servian soldier darted from the crowd of bodies, and took mortal aim. The grandson of Othman was mild in his temper, modest in his apparel, and a lover of learning and virtue.

526. When did the reign of Bajazet the First, son of Amurath, commence ?

A.D. 1389. His character is strongly expressed in his surname *Ilderim*, or the Lightning, an epithet expressive of the fiery energy of his soul, and the destructive rapidity of his march. He moved at the head of his armies from Boursa to Adrianople, from the Danube to the Euphrates ; and invaded with impartial ambition the Christian and Mahometan princes of Europe and Asia. From Angora to Amasia and Erzeroum, the northern regions of Anatolia were reduced to obedience. He stripped of their hereditary possessions, his brother emirs of Ghermian and Carmania, of Aidin and Sarukhan ; and after the conquest of Iconium, the ancient kingdom of the Seljukians again revived in the Ottoman dynasty.

527. Were the conquests of Bajazet less important in Europe ?

No ; he imposed a regular form of servitude on the Servians and Bulgarians, passed to the Danube in search of new enemies and new subjects in the heart of Moldavia, and was acknowledged emperor of Thrace, Macedonia, and Thessaly. He entered Greece by the gates of Thermopylæ, and stationed a fleet of galleys at Gallipoli, to command the Hellespont, and intercept the Latin succours of Constantinople.

528. From whom did Bajazet receive the patent of sultan ?

From the caliphs, who served in Egypt under the yoke of the Mamelukes, a homage yielded by force to opinion, by the Turkish conquerors to the house of Abbas and the successors of the Arabian prophet.

529. What was his first enterprise after receiving the title of sultan?

The invasion of Hungary.

530. What was the confederate force he encountered?

An army of one hundred thousand Christians under Sigismond, the Hungarian king, son and brother of the emperors of the west: his cause was that of Europe and the church; and on the report of his danger, the bravest knights of France and Germany were eager to march under his standard and that of the cross.

531. When and where did the armies meet?

On the 28th of September, A.D. 1396, at Nicopolis, where Bajazet defeated the league which had proudly boasted, that if the sky should fall, it could uphold it on lances. The greater part was slain or driven into the Danube; and Sigismond, escaping to Constantinople by the river and Black Sea, returned, after a long circuit, to his exhausted kingdom.

532. Name the French princes taken captive at Nicopolis.

John, Count of Nevers, a fearless youth, son of the Duke of Burgundy, sovereign of Flanders, and uncle of Charles the Sixth, was accompanied by his four cousins. Their inexperience was guided by the Sire de Courcy, one of the best and oldest captains of Christendom; but the constable, admiral, and marshal of France, commanded an army which did not exceed the number of a thousand knights and squires. The thoughtless

youths were heated with wine, when their scouts announced the approach of the Turks ; and they resented the advice of Sigismond, which would have deprived them of the right and honour of the foremost attack.

533. What was the result of their impetuosity ?

They were overpowered by numbers before succour could reach them ; and their defeat threw all the leagued forces into confusion. The battle of Nicopolis would not have been lost, if the French had obeyed the prudent advice of the Hungarians ; but it might have been gloriously won, had the Hungarians imitated the valour of the French.

534. How did the sultan treat his noble captives ?

He was so exasperated by the loss of his bravest Janizaries, and the massacre of their Turkish prisoners, by the French, on the eve of the engagement, that he ordered the captives to be beheaded, reserving only twenty-five, whose birth and riches led him to expect a ransom. Of these, the constable and the Sire de Courcy died in prison at Boursa. The admiral of France was slain in the first engagement.

535. Who furnished the ransoms ?

The Duke of Burgundy, or rather his Flemish subjects, who were bound by the feudal laws to contribute for the knighthood and captivity of the eldest son of their lord.

536. Did the Turks exact a promise from the French captives, that they would never again bear arms against the person of the sultan ?

This was stipulated in the treaty ; but the conqueror himself abolished the ungenerous restraint. "I despise," said he to the heir of Burgundy, " thy oaths, and thy arms. Thou art young, and mayest be ambi-

tious of effacing the disgrace or misfortune of thy first chivalry. Assemble thy powers, proclaim thy design, and be assured that Bajazet will rejoice to meet thee a second time in a field of battle."

537. Were the princes astonished at the magnificence of the Ottoman court?

Yes, they were filled with admiration at Bajazet's hunting and hawking equipage, which was composed of seven thousand huntsmen, and seven thousand falconers; the splendour of his officers and servants of the chase; his hounds with satin housings; leopards with collars set with jewels; Grecian greyhounds, and dogs from Europe, strong as African lions. The stern justice and undisputed power of this sovereign were equal to his immense treasure.

538. Who succeeded John Palæologus?

Manuel, A.D. 1391.

539. Did Bajazet treat with the Greeks?

Yes; he granted a truce of ten years, for an annual tribute of thirty thousand crowns of gold; but he enjoyed the glory of establishing a Turkish cadhi, and founding a royal moseh in the metropolis of the eastern church.

540. Who violated this truce?

The restless sultan: in the cause of the prince of Selybria, an army of Ottomans again threatened Constantinople; and the distress of Manuel implored the protection of the king of France, who despatched a reinforcement under the command of the Marshal Boucicault.

541. Did the marshal revenge his captivity?

He landed at Constantinople, with six hundred men-

at-arms, and sixteen hundred archers, and reviewed them in the adjacent plain, without condescending to number or array the multitude of Greeks. He raised the blockade by sea and land, and drove the flying squadrons of Bajazet to a respectful distance.

542. What followed ?

The Ottomans returned with an increase of numbers ; and Boucicault, after a year's struggle, returned to France, accompanied by Manuel, who sought a supply of men and money at the French court. The prince of Selybria ascended the throne during the absence of the emperor ; but had scarcely seized the reins of government, before the Turkish sultan claimed the city as his own, and disregarded the hereditary rights of his vassal. But the triumphant demand of Bajazet was arrested by the more powerful arm of Timour or Tamerlane, whose victorious arms threatened on all sides.

543. What was the state of France at this period ?

A great crisis took place in the French constitution during the reigns of the earlier princes of the house of Valois, particularly of John, when the country was oppressed by the successful and unjust inroads of our Edward the Third.

544. Does the contest in the reign of King John of France, resemble in its history, the struggle between King John of England and his barons ?

In some of its distinct stages : in others, it more forcibly reminds us of Charles the First and his parliament ; but the outrages committed, assume in their records, an aspect of affairs precisely the same as the frightful and disgraceful periods of the late French revolution. The dauphin's officers murdered in his presence, and the party-coloured cap placed upon his head, as was, in a similar irruption into the palace, the

bonnet rouge on the head of the most amiable and most unfortunate monarch, Louis the Sixteenth.

545. What prince first assumed the title of Dauphiné?

Charles the Wise. Dauphiné was annexed to the crown of France by the will of Hubert, Count of Dauphin, who unfortunately killed his son, by letting him fall out of a window. This circumstance so preyed upon his mind, that he withdrew into a monastery, bequeathing his temporal possessions to Philip the Sixth, provided the eldest sons of the kings of France would perpetuate his title.

546. What was the states-general?

The parliament convened by Philip le Bel and the house of Valois. It was resisted, overcome, and, in fact, disposed of, by John and the dauphin; the latter mounted the throne with the title of Charles the Fifth, and, in consequence of the late contest, everything was submitted to his will.

547. What was the result?

During the reign of Charles, his policy and power secured the people their rights, and defended them from their enemies. But on the death of that monarch, his son was a minor, and the princes of the blood were disunited and ambitious. The absence of a states-general, or legislative assembly, deprived the country of order and law, at a time when it was destroyed by the factions of the royal family, and invaded by a foreign power.

548. Did the earlier part of the reign of Charles the Sixth, resemble the beginning of his father's sovereignty?

Yes, in the renewal of the contest between the crown and the people. The monarchy of France,

founded by Philip Augustus, who had wrested from the English their possessions, then amounting to a third of the kingdom, had acquired power as the feudal system declined, and the jurisprudence of the country was gradually transferred from the council of the barons to the courts of the sovereigns. The genius of Charles the Fifth had been devoted to the establishment of the power of the crown, whilst his vigorous measures won the hearts of his people. But the counsellors of the young prince were not impelled by love to their country; and their arbitrary impositions were met by cries and insurrection.

549. What were the consequences?

The Duke of Anjou was obliged to summons the states-general; but that national assembly was imperfectly organised, and inefficient to stem the torrent, or support its own measures.

550. Name the event that destroyed the mixed constitution of France, and invested the crown with arbitrary power.

The successful expedition against the Flemings, and a victorious army, enabled the Duke of Burgundy, one of the royal council, to return to Paris, and to settle all constitutional discussions by the sword. The states-general was set at nought, the city treated as if conquered, and disgraced by the public execution of its citizens.

551. Name the two great parties in the state?

The rival houses of Burgundy and Orleans. Their dissensions were the cause of so great exasperation in their respective adherents, at a time when the inroads of the English invaders spread consternation, that the annals of the French nation present only a continued succession of assassinations, massacres, and executions.

552. Did France remain long in the possession of the English?

Henry the Fifth, of England, was crowned king of France in the French capital; and thirty years of bloody conflict ensued before the invaders were expelled.

553. What monarch rescued France from her conquerors?

Charles the Seventh, who was crowned by the Maid of Orleans, a heroine whose matchless and noble exploits convert the truths of history into legends of romance.

554. What effect had the expulsion of the English on the power of the crown of France?

It was necessarily strengthened; the nation willingly yielded to a prince of the house of Valois, whose reign was a state of happiness and triumph contrasted with an invader on the throne.

555. What distinguished Charles the Seventh's reign?
The establishment of a standing army.

556. What was the result?

The power of the crown had no more tempests to encounter; no further contest appears in the succeeding reigns. The person of the king might be insulted, or endangered, but not the royal authority.

557. What was the character of Louis the Eleventh?

He was penetrating, sagacious, cautious, and considered well the proportion between his means and his ends, a finished dissembler of his own interests and passions, and a skilful master of those of others; decisive, active, and entirely devoid of principle and feeling.

He was imprisoned by Charles the Bold in the Castle of Peronne, for instigating a rebellion at Liege.

558. How did Louis gain possession of Burgundy?

After the death of Charles the Bold, he seized Burgundy as a male fief, and proposed a marriage between his son, aged seven, and the Princess Mary, daughter and sole heiress of the late duke. Alarmed at Louis's proceedings, she married Maximilian, son of the Emperor Frederic the Third. A war immediately ensued.

559. Were the negotiations which terminated the war advantageous to the French?

Yes; Louis retained Burgundy, Franch-Comte, Artois, Flanders, and almost the whole of the Netherlands.

560. In what manner did he obtain his other possessions?

Charles, Count of Maine, dying without issue, left Anjou, Maine, Provence, and Bar, to Louis. Boulogne he purchased, and Rousillon and Cerdagne he seized under pretence of mortgage.

561. What title did the French king assume in this reign?

That of *Majesty*.

562. How long did the victory of Timour or Tamerlane delay the fall of Constantinople?

Fifty years.

563. From what was his name or title derived?

Demir, or Timour, signifies, in the Turkish language, Iron; and Beg is the appellation of a lord or prince; by the change of a letter or accent, it is Lenc or Lame, which have been corrupted into Tamerlane.

564. What were the pretensions of the Mogul conqueror?

His ancestor, of the noble tribe of Berlass, was Carashar Nevian, vizir of Zagatai, in his new realm of Transoxiana: by a female branch, Timour could claim descent from the imperial stem.

565. Where was Timour born?

Forty miles to the south of Samarcand, in the village of Sebzar, situated in the fruitful territory of Cash, of which his fathers were the hereditary chiefs, as well as of a *toman* of ten thousand horse.

566. Was the state of anarchy, which existed in the Asiatic dynasties, auspicious to the ambitious projects of the young adventurer?

Yes, the khans of Zagatai were extinct; the emirs aspired to independence; and their domestic feuds were only suspended by the conquest and tyranny of the khans of Kashgar, who, with an army of Getes or Calmucks, invaded the Transoxian kingdom.

567. At what period did Timour commence his military career?

A.D. 1361. From the twelfth year of his age, he had been on the field of action; and in the twenty-fifth, he stood forth as the deliverer of his country.

568. How was the hero received?

The chiefs of the law and army swore fealty on their salvation, and pledged their lives and fortunes to support him; but in the hour of danger, they were silent and afraid; and after waiting seven days on the hills of Samarcand, he retreated to the desert with only sixty horsemen. The fugitives were overtaken by a thousand Getes, whom he repulsed with incredible slaughter, and his enemies were forced to exclaim,

“Timour is a wonderful man—fortune and the Divine favour are with him.”

569. Was adversity useful to Timour ?

Yes, his fame shone brighter, and he learned a lesson peculiar to that state, to distinguish the real friends of his person, the faithful adherents of his fortunes ; and he improved the opportunity, by applying the various characters of men for their advantage, and, above all, for his own.

570. Describe, in his own pathetic simplicity, his reception on returning to his native country.

After wanderings in the desert, imprisonment in a loathsome dungeon, and outlawry in the border states, he presented himself as a guide to three chiefs, who were at the head of seventy horse. “When their eyes fell upon me,” says Timour, “they were overwhelmed with joy ; and they alighted from their horses, and they came and kneeled, and they kissed my stirrup. I also came down from my horse, and took each of them in my arms, and I put my turban on the head of the first chief ; and my girdle, rich in jewels, and wrought with gold, I bound on the loins of the second ; and the third I clothed in my own coat. And they wept, and I wept also ; and the hour of prayer was arrived, and we prayed. And we mounted our horses, and came to my dwelling ; and I collected my people, and made a feast.”

571. When did Timour ascend the throne of Zagatai ?

A.D. 1370. In the thirty-fourth year of his age ; the bravest tribes joined his trusty bands, and after some vicissitudes of war, the Getes were finally driven from Transoxiana, and in a general diet, or *couroultai*, he was invested with imperial command.

572. Did the fertile kingdom of Zagatai satisfy the ambition of Timour?

No, he aspired to the dominion of the world; and before his death, he had placed twenty-seven crowns on his head.

573. How were the civil and military transactions of his reign recorded?

By his secretaries; Timour himself composed the commentaries of his life, and the institutions of his government. The journals of his secretaries were communicated to Sherefeddin Ali, a native of Yezd, who composed, in the Persian language, a history of Timour Beg, which was translated into French by M. Petit de la Croix.

574. When did Timour reduce the kingdom of Iran, or Persia, to obedience?

After invading the dependent countries of Carizme and Candahar, he extended his conquests the whole course of the Tigris and Euphrates, A.D. 1393.

575. Who was Shah Mansour?

Prince of Fars, or the Proper Persia; the most valiant, but least powerful, of Timour's foes; he broke with three or four thousand soldiers, the cont, or main body, of thirty thousand horse, where the emperor fought in person. Timour bore testimony to the valour of this intrepid race.

576. In what year did Timour conquer Turkestan?

A.D. 1383.

577. Name his next conquest.

Kipzak, or western Tartary. Toctamish, a fugitive prince, was entertained at the court of the emperor, and finally established in the Mogul empire of the

north; but after a reign of ten years, the new khan forgot the merits and the strength of his benefactor, upbraided him as a base usurper of the rights of the house of Zingis, and entered Persia through the gates of Derbend, with an army of ninety thousand horse: with the innumerable forces of Kipzak, Bulgaria, Circassia, and Russia, he passed the Sihoon, burnt the palaces of Timour, and compelled him, amidst the winter snows, to contend for Samarcand and his life.

578. After a mild expostulation, and a glorious victory, how did the emperor punish the invader?

By marching by the east and the west of the Caspian and Volga, into Kipzak, at the head of a host which measured thirteen miles from the right to the left wing. During their five months' march, they seldom encountered man, and they entrusted their daily subsistence to the chase.

579. Were the Zagatais victorious?

They defeated Toctamish, and reduced the tributary provinces of Russia, sacked Azoph at the mouth of the Don, and burnt the cities of Serai and Astrachan.

580. How was Timour's proposal to invade Hindostan received by the princes and emirs?

By murmur of discontent. "The rivers, and the mountains and deserts, and the soldiers clad in armour, and the elephants, destroyers of men," met the ear of an emperor whose displeasure was more dreadful than all these terrors.

581. Did the tremendous aspect of this enterprise deter Timour from the undertaking?

No; the superior reason of the emperor discerned the weakness and anarchy of Hindostan, where the soubahs of the province had erected the standard of rebellion.

582. Describe his route.

Between the Jihoon and the Indus he crossed one of the ridges of mountains, styled by the Arabian geographers "the stony girdles of the earth." From Attok on the Indus, he marched to Delhi, and after defeating the forces of the sultan Mahmoud, Timour made his triumphal entry into the capital of Hindostan. His subsequent campaign in the northern hills, and the massacre of the Gentoos, whose number surpassed the Moslems in the proportion of ten to one, form the subject of some of the journals.

583. When did Timour declare war against the sultan Bajazet?

A.D. 1400. He left the tranquil palace of Samarcand, and proclaimed an expedition of seven years into the western countries of Asia.

584. Name some of the conquests of this invasion.

Sebaste, a strong city on the borders of Anatolia, was besieged and destroyed; four thousand Armenians massacred; Syria and Egypt were invaded, and the impregnable citadel of Aleppo was surrendered by treachery.

585. Relate the conversation between Timour and the cadhi.

The conqueror proposed a question which the casuists of Bochara, Samarcand, and Herat were incapable of resolving. "Who are the true martyrs,—those who are slain on my side, or on that of my enemies?" One of the cadhis of Aleppo is said to have replied in the words of Mahomet himself, that the motive, not the ensign, constitutes the martyr; and that the Moslems of either party, who fight only for the glory of God, may deserve that sacred appellation.

586. In what year did Timour reduce Damascus to ashes ?

A.D. 1401.

587. Mention some of the devastating consequences of his voluntary retreat from Palestine and Egypt.

The burning of Aleppo, and the taking of Bagdad, on whose ruins he erected a pyramid of ninety thousand heads ; after which sanguinary deed he visited Georgia, and encamped on the banks of the Araxes, where he again proclaimed war against the Ottoman emperor.

588. What great battle followed the invasion of Anatolia by the Moguls ?

The battle of Angora, A.D. 1402.

589. How did this contest affect the fortunes of Bajazet ?

He was defeated and taken prisoner, and his death, in consequence of the severe degradations to which he was subjected in captivity, tarnishes the glory of Timour's victory.

590. When did the emperor return to his capital ?

After the conquest of Georgia : he passed the winter on the banks of Araxes ; appeased the troubles of Persia ; and slowly returned to his capital, after a campaign of four years and nine months.

591. Describe the power and magnificence Timour displayed on the throne of Samarcand.

He distributed rewards and punishments with justice ; and listened to the complaints of the people. His riches were employed in the architecture of palaces and temples, the stately mosch he had admired at Delhi being one of his models. During this short repose, the emperor gave audience to the ambassadors

of Egypt, Arabia, India, Tartary, Russia, Spain, and France. The representative of Henry the Third, of Castile, presented a suit of tapestry which eclipsed the pencil of the oriental artists. Charles the Seventh, of France, corresponded with the Mogul emperor.

592. How were the marriages of the emperor's six grandsons celebrated?

The pomp of the ancient caliphs was revived at their nuptials. The gardens of Canighul were decorated with innumerable tents and pavilions, and displayed the luxury of a great city with the spoils of a victorious camp. The grand festivals of modern kingdoms are puny attempts, contrasted with the splendour and profusion of the court of Samarcand. Whole forests were cut down to supply fuel; the plain was spread with pyramids of meat, and vases of every liquor, to which thousands of guests were courteously invited: the orders of the state, and the nations of the earth, were marshalled at the royal banquet; and a Persian writer mentions the reception of the European ambassadors with an apology, pleading that, even the *casses*, or smallest fishes, find their place in the ocean.

593. Were many of the customs of the present day observed at this public rejoicing?

Yes; joy was testified by illuminations and masquerades. The trades of Samarcand passed in procession with quaint devices and pageantry.

594. Name an instance of the vast treasures of this prince.

The bridegrooms and their brides were nine times dressed in gorgeous robes, and the pearls and rubies showered on their heads with each change of apparel, were contemptuously abandoned to their attendants.

595. How long did Timour enjoy this season of tranquillity?

Only two months ; he was soon engaged in the cares of war and government: the standard was unfurled for the invasion of China ; but on his march to Pekin, in his camp at Otrar, the angel of death arrested his progress, A.D. 1405. His designs were lost ; his armies disbanded ; and China was saved.

596. Name the amusement of this emperor's leisure hours.

The game of chess ; he increased the number of pieces to fifty-six, and the squares to one hundred and thirty ; but excepting at this court the old game has been thought sufficiently elaborate. The Mogul sovereign was gratified by the victory of a subject ; a chess-player will understand this encomium.

597. What became of the empire?

A fragment was governed by Sharokh, Timour's younger son, but the next century beheld Transoxiana and Persia trampled on by the Usbecks of the north, and the Turkmans of the black and white sheep ; and the race of Timour would have been extinct had not one of his descendants escaped to Hindostan. His successors extended their sway from the mountains of Cashmere to Cape Comorin, and from Candahar to the Gulf of Bengal. After the reign of Aurungzebe, their empire was dissolved, their treasures rifled by a Persian robber, and their kingdoms possessed by merchants from an island in the Northern Ocean.

598. What was the fate of the Ottoman empire?

Gibbon beautifully styles it a "massy trunk bent to the ground ;" but no sooner did the hurricane pass away, than it again rose with fresh vigour and more lively vegetation.

599. How was the empire governed after the death of Bajazet?

Successively, by his sons, Mustapha, Isa, Soliman, Mousa, and Mahomet the First, who ascended the throne A.D. 1413.

600. Who was Ibrahim?

One of the vizirs Mahomet chose to guide the youth of his son Amurath. The virtues of Ibrahim are praised by a contemporary Greek (Ducas). His descendants, the sole nobles of Turkey, contented themselves with the same pious administrations; were excused all public offices, and received two visits annually from the sultan.

601. When did Amurath the Second ascend the throne?

A.D. 1421. In this reign Romania and Anatolia re-united.

602. What was the state of the Greek empire at this period?

Soliman had respected the laws of gratitude, and the ruin of Constantinople had been suspended; but the restoration of Mustapha to the throne of Romania was the signal for the siege of the Byzantine capital. To the honour of the Greeks, they repelled the assault of two thousand Turks; and after a siege of two months, Amurath was recalled to Boursa by a domestic revolt; and his attention being diverted, he led his Janizaries to new conquests, while the Byzantine empire rested in a servile and precarious respite for thirty years.

603. Was the Ottoman succession hereditary?

Yes; and, except in a single instance, a period of nine reigns, and two hundred and sixty-five years, is occupied from the elevation of Othman to the death of

Soliman by a rare series of warlike and active princes, who impressed their subjects with obedience and their enemies with terror.

604. What was their discipline and education ?

The heirs of royalty were educated in the council and the field ; from early youth they were entrusted by their fathers with the command of provinces and armies. This was often productive of civil war, but it essentially contributed to the discipline and vigour of the monarchy. In the Ottoman government the primitive subjects of Othman were excluded from all civil and military honours ; and the hardy and warlike nations of the north were raised by the discipline of education to obey, to conquer, and to command their conquerors. The provinces of Thrace, Macedonia, Albania, Bulgaria, and Servia, were the perpetual seminary of the Turkish army, and the fifth child of every Christian family was enrolled at the age of fourteen ; after which they were clothed, taught, and maintained for the public service.

605. Name the royal schools.

Boursa, Pera, and Adrianople. In these the youths were entrusted to the care of bashaws, or dispersed in the houses of the Anatolian peasantry. They were instructed in the Turkish language, wrestling, leaping, running, shooting with the bow, and afterwards with the musket, until they were drafted into the chambers and companies of the Janizaries to be severely trained in the military or monastic discipline of the order.

606. What were the Agiamoglans and Ichoglans ?

The ranks into which youths of birth, talents, and beauty were admitted ; the former were attached to the palace, and the latter to the person of the prince. The arts of horsemanship, and darting the javelin, were daily exercises. The study of the Koran and the

knowledge of the Arabic and Persian tongues occupying their leisure.

607. How were they ultimately promoted ?

They were admitted into the number of the forty agas, who stood before the sultan ; and he, according to his own pleasure, assigned them the government of provinces, and the first honours of the empire.

608. What was the effect of this institution ?

It was admirably adapted to the form and spirit of a despotic monarchy. The ministers and generals were the slaves of the emperor. The Ottoman candidates were trained by the virtues of abstinence to those of action ; by the habits of submission to those of command. A similar spirit was diffused among the troops ; and their silence and sobriety, their patience and modesty, have extorted the reluctant praise of their Christian enemies.

609. Was gunpowder used by Amurath at the siege of Constantinople ?

Yes ; the chemists of China or Europe had found by casual or elaborate experiments that a mixture of salt-petre, sulphur, and charcoal produced, with a spark of fire, a tremendous explosion. This discovery was known to Germany, Italy, Spain, France and England. The treachery of the Genoese disclosed the secret to the Turks ; and the sultan employed and rewarded Christian engineers. By the Venetians, the use of gunpowder was communicated to the sultans of Egypt and Persia.

610. Name some of the negotiations between the eastern emperors and the pope.

For four centuries the friendly or hostile aspect of the Greek emperors towards the popes and the Latins

may be observed as the thermometer of their prosperity or distress ;—as the scale of the rise and fall of barbarian dynasties. The elder Andronicus neither feared nor loved the Latins ; but his grandson was admonished by the conquest of Bithynia, by the Turks, to seek a temporal and spiritual alliance with the western empire. An embassy was despatched to Pope Benedict the Twelfth, with artful instructions to represent the desire of the eastern churches for re-union with the Latin Christians, the threatened assault from the Turks, the necessity for a general crusade, and the alternative of joining so useful an ally as the sinking empire, to guard the confines of Europe on the invasion of the Turkish arms, supported by the troops and treasures of captive Greece.

611. How were the reasons, the offers, and the demands of Andronicus received ?

The kings of France and Naples declined the dangers and glory of drawing their swords in the cause ; and the pope treated the proposals with cold and stately indifference.

612. Why did Cantacuzene send an embassy to Clement the Fifth ?

He was anxious to conciliate the Roman pontiff, by justifying, or at least extenuating, the introduction of the Turks into Europe, and considered it polite to send a special messenger to represent the hard necessity which had urged him to embrace the alliance of a Musulman prince.

613. Which of the Byzantine princes acknowledged with the greatest deference the authority of the pope ?

John Palaeologus the First. His mother, Anne of Savoy, had carefully educated him in the tenets of her own faith ; and he subscribed to a treaty, the first

article of which was an oath of fidelity and obedience to Innocent the Sixth and his successors, the supreme pontiffs of the Roman church.

614. What did he require in return for this concession?

The prompt succour of fifteen galleys, with five hundred men at arms, and a thousand archers, to serve against his Christian and Musulman enemies. But this treaty was never executed nor published.

615. Name the first Greek emperor who visited the regions of the west.

John Palæologus; he sought in vain the assistance of Urban the Fifth, and the other powers of the west.

616. Who was John Hawkwood?

An English mercenary, who with a band of adventurers, called the White Brotherhood, ravaged Italy from the Alps to Calabria. He was excommunicated for shooting arrows against the papal residence. After twenty-two victories, and one defeat, he died in 1394, general of the Florentines, and was buried with such honours as the republic has not paid to Dante or Petrarch.

617. How was the emperor Manuel received at the French court?

In Italy he was pitied as the champion of the faith, and his dignity prevented that pity from sinking into contempt. On the confines of France he was met by two thousand of the richest citizens, in arms and on horseback. At the gates of Paris he was saluted by the chancellor, and the parliament, and Charles the Sixth, attended by his princes and nobles, welcomed him with a cordial embrace. The successor of Constantine was clothed in a robe of white silk, the symbol

of sovereignty, and entertained with the pleasures of the banquet and the chase,—but the state of the kingdom precluded any effectual assistance.

618. When did Manuel visit England?

In the reign of Henry the Fourth, A.D. 1400.

619. When did the Greeks consider the nations of Europe too powerful, and too well organised to be called barbarians?

The veil of separation was removed by the visits of their last emperors; and the observations of Manuel and his more inquisitive followers, have been preserved by a Byzantine historian of the times.

620. What were the feelings of the Greek emperor towards the Latins in the beginning of the fifteenth century?

So long as the sons of Bajazet solicited his friendship, and spared his dominions, Manuel was satisfied. But the conquests of Mahomet and Amurath caused letters and embassies between the east and west, and both public and private motives reconciled the emperor to the Vatican, when Martin the Fifth ascended without a rival the chair of St. Peter.

621. Who was acknowledged sole emperor of the Greeks on the death of Manuel?

His son, John Palæologus the Second, A.D. 1425.

622. What was the state of the Greek language at Constantinople in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries?

In their lowest servitude and depression, the subjects of the Byzantine throne were still possessed of a golden key that could unlock the treasures of antiquity; of a musical and prolific language, that gives a soul to

the objects of sense, and a body to the abstractions of philosophy. The national dialect was corrupted by the inroads of barbarians; but a pure idiom was spoken in the court, and taught in the college. The ancient standard of elegance was maintained by the noble matrons, who were excluded from all intercourse with foreigners;—and the Greeks, attached by birth and office to the Byzantine court, preserved their elaborate and correct style of writing.

623. When did the Greeks first emigrate to Italy?

A.D. 1400.

624. Who introduced the Greek language into Italy?

In the dark ages, a few profound scholars beyond the Alps, were honourably distinguished by their knowledge of the Greek tongue; but the fifteenth century witnessed its restoration, after a long oblivion of many hundred years. Barlaum, the secretary and ambassador, a man of learning and genius, of a piercing discernment, though of a slow and painful elocution, was the first who revived the memory, or rather the writings, of Homer in Italy; Petrarch, the first of the Latin scholars, and Boccace, encouraged the Greek literature; but it was not until the end of the fourteenth century, that the faintly burning embers burst with a new and perpetual flame in the reign of Boniface the Ninth, in the school of Manuel Chrysoloras: a Greek noble, envoy of the emperor Manuel Chrysoloras, whose Roman ancestors are supposed to have followed the great Constantine, was invited to assume the office of professor; and the remainder of his life was divided between Italy and Constantinople, between embassies and lessons.

625. When was the Greek language introduced into the university of Oxford?

In the last years of the fifteenth century, by Grocyn, Linacer, and Latimer, who had all studied at Florence under Demetrius Chalcocondyles.

626. What was the progress of the Latins?

They seconded and surpassed the Greeks in literary ardour. Italy was divided into many independent states; and at that time it was the ambition of princes and republics to vie with each other in the encouragement and reward of literature.

627. What was the character of Nicholas the Fifth?

His fame has not been adequate to his merits: from a plebeian origin, he raised himself by his virtue and learning; the character of the man prevailed over the interest of the pope. He had been the friend, and he became the patron, of the most eminent scholars of the age; and such was the humility of his manners, that the change was scarcely discernible, either to them or himself. From the ruins of the Byzantine libraries, from the darkest monasteries of Germany and Britain, he collected the dusty manuscripts of the writers of antiquity. The Vatican was replenished with more precious furniture, and in a reign of eight years, Nicholas formed a library of five thousand volumes. To his munificence, the Latin world was indebted for the versions of Xenophon, Diodorus, Polybius, Thucydides, Herodotus, and Appian, of Strabo's Geography, of the Iliad, of the most valuable works of Plato and Aristotle, of Ptolemy and Theophrastus, and of the Fathers of the Greek church. The example of the Roman pontiff was preceeded, or imitated, by a Florentine merchant, who governed the republic without arms and without a title.

628. Who wrote a literary history of Cosmo and Lorenzo de Medicis?

Tiraboschi.

629. How did Cosmo de Medicis obtain his great riches?

Cosmo de Medicis, the father of a line of princes, derived his immense wealth from that extensive commerce which distinguished Florence, and deservedly gave it the name of 'the flourishing city,' a reputation which subjected its nobles to reproach.

630. With whom did he trade?

From Persia to Andalusia the world was subservient to his traffic; the difference of religion prevented his treating with infidels, but his correspondence with the Turkish emperors ingratiated him in their favour, and his mercantile agents were allowed to establish factories at the Thracian trading ports, when the merchants of Genoa and Venice, from political feelings, were expelled; the emirs of Babylon, and the Mamelukes of Egypt, facilitated his importation of silks, and other precious commodities into their several dominions; and the impoverished Pataologi gladly accepted his offer of purchasing the splendid jewels and furniture, the relics of the past grandeur and luxury of the Justinians and Porphyrogeniti.

631. Name the ancient families who, from envy, conspired his ruin.

The Strozzi, Peruzzi, Barbadori, and Albizzi.

632. What measures did they take to accomplish their designs?

Having determined on the destruction of Cosmo, they, by false accusations, succeeded in having him

arrested, on the plea of having leagued against the welfare of the state, by underselling the merchandise of the city.

633. How did Cosmo defeat the machinations of his enemies?

Suspecting them of a design to poison him, he bribed his gaoler, and effected his escape; the gonfaloniere, or sovereign magistrate, being favourable to his cause, detected the plot, and enabled him to gain the frontier.

634. Did the Florentines recall Cosmo de Medicis?

Yes, in conjunction with the banished gonfaloniere he had established his trade at Venice, and the republic of Florence discovered the inconvenience of a rival in commerce.

635. What remarkable fact is related of his successful traffic?

During the fifty years he traded with all the noted marts in the known world, he never suffered any loss, and never lost an opportunity for increasing his commerce.

636. Name the next conspiracy against the Medici.

The Pitti sought the ruin of Piero de Medicis, after the death of his father, who was interred with great pomp in the church of St. Lorenzo, which he had founded. The Pitti were supported by the Venetians, and invaded Tuscany with an army, but failing in their attempt to take Pisa by surprise, they lost the advantage of Piero's death.

637. What was the state of the house of Medici when the young Lorenzo became its head?

Its ruin appeared inevitable, but the grandson of

“ The Father of the country” won the council by his oratory and the justice of his measures, and the auxiliary troops were induced to renew their engagements, by the liberality of his adherents.

638. Where were field-pieces first used by the Florentine army?

On the banks of the river Riccardi, in the territory of Bologna: the effect was ludicrous, as the artillery merely took off the heel of the Prince of Ferrara’s boot.

639. What other circumstance is mentioned by the Sieur de Varillas?

Night approaching before the battle was ended, the black guards, grooms, and footmen kindled flambeaux, and held them on the field to light their masters,—a custom usual at tournaments.

640. How did Lorenzo treat the rebellious Volterrani?

He besieged the town, and compelled them to surrender at discretion: by stratagem the state of Volterra was saved from pillage; a politic measure for a general who wished to enlist the citizens in his favour.

641. For whom did Lorenzo solicit a cardinal’s cap?

His brother Giuliano; but Pope Sixtus the Fourth objected to the terms, and refused to confer the dignity.

642. How did Lorenzo take revenge?

He wasted the army of the church before Tiserno, and threw obstacles in the way of the pope’s nephew, who aimed at the sovereignty of Immola.

643. What did this give rise to ?

The Pazzi conspiracy ; the death of Giuliano de Medici followed : the accomplices were all punished. The arch-bishop of Pisa was executed in his pontifical robes, but Bandini escaped into Turkey.

644. At whose suggestion did Bajazet the Second deliver up Bandini to the Florentines ?

He blindly followed all the sentiments of Cady Bashaw, his prime vizir,—a fact confirmed by his son, Selim the First, who, when asked, “ Why he did not wear a long beard, like his father’s ? ” replied, “ It was because he feared the bashaws would take him by it and lead him where they listed.”

645. Who formed a league between the pope and the king of Naples, against the Florentines ?

The commissioner Nardi.

646. How did Lorenzo meet this new difficulty ?

He sustained the war until abandoned by his allies ; In this dilemma, he boldly resolved to surprise King Ferrand of Naples ; and inviting the young Florentine nobles to follow him, under the pretence of a hunting match, sailed for Naples, frustrated the measures of Resalli the ambasador, and gaining the confidence of the king, induced him to dissolve the league ; and procured peace to the Florentines.

647. How did the king of Naples derive benefit from the friendship of Lorenzo ?

Two years afterwards Ferrand was oppressed by his nobles, who with the pope and the Venetians sought to dethrone him ; Lorenzo, unsolicited, flew to his succour, bribed the enemies’ troops, caused the Orsini to declare for him, and restored the power to the crown.

648. Did the peace of Italy end with the life of Lorenzo?

Yes; the impetuous Piero, his eldest son, reckless of consequences, governed so imprudently, that the power of the house of Medici was undermined by the discontent of the citizens of Florence, and the neighbouring states were involved in the revolt.

649. Was Lorenzo the most celebrated man after Mecænas who supported the magnificence of his establishment by a private fortune?

Yes; and his taste for literature induced him to patronise the arts and sciences, to build and endow schools, where he distributed rewards, and encouraged genius by his own example.

650. How did he employ the Greeks who sought refuge at Florence?

He commissioned them to buy all the ancient manuscripts that had been pillaged from Constantinople, and formed the library which afterwards became a subject of contention to other nations.

651. When was this library plundered?

From the time of Charles the Eighth to the regency of Catherine de Medici, who by force and artifice obtained a portion of it out of the hands of the English, and during her lifetime prevented their being placed with the king's manuscripts.

652. What was the object Lorenzo had in view?

He designed to attract the literati of Europe by his vast collection; he invited all, and had daily provision made for their reception. Conferences were held, and masters were appointed for all who desired instruction in painting, sculpture, &c.

653. Name one of this school whose name is immortalised.

Michael Angelo : at nineteen he executed a copy from an antique which could not be distinguished from the original.

654. How did Lorenzo conciliate the discontented citizens of Pisa ?

By persuading the Florentines to found a university there.

655. In what manner did Lorenzo contribute to its renown ?

He conferred honours and emoluments, attracted professors from other universities by his liberality, and by placing the young Cardinal de Medici there to study civil and canon law, drew the attention of other noble families.

656. Name the seven learned men who assisted him in examining the progress of the students.

Johannes Picus de la Mirandola, Angelus Politianus, Marsileo Ficino, Christophano Laudini, Johannes Lascaris, Demetrius Chalcondilas, and Marcellus Trachamontano.

657. From whom was Giovanni Pico, sovereign Prince della Mirandola, descended ?

Constantine the Great : he was surnamed “the phoenix of wits ;” at eighteen he knew two-and-twenty tongues. His celebrated thesis was criticised publicly by a deputation of literati at Rome, and his replies were so brilliant and conclusive that they astonished the world.

658. What is said of the friendship of the Prince of Mirandola and Lorenzo de Medici ?

They daily communicated their researches, exchanged works, and corrected one another's compositions.

659. When did this amiable and accomplished prince breathe his last?

At the very moment that Charles the Eighth entered Florence, and the library of the Medici was pillaged: the favourite son of science was spared, by death, the pang of witnessing the sacrilege, and before he completed his work against the astrologers he died of fever, in the thirty-second year of his age.

660. How did Cardinal Bessarion lose the election to the papal chair?

Through the obstinate and impolitic conduct of Nicolo Perroti his conclave, who refused admittance to his colleagues.

661. Name some celebrated men who have borne testimony to the greatness of his character.

Popes, Eugenius the Fourth, Nicholas the Fifth, and Pius the Second, declared on their death-beds to the sacred college that Bessarion was the man worthy of being their successor.

662. Where did Bessarion die?

At Ravenna. The house of Medici erected a mausoleum to his memory.

663. What measures did Lodovico Sforza take to exclude the Duke of Calabria from the crown of Naples?

He solicited Charles the Eighth of France to enter Italy, and establish his ancestor's pretensions to the two Sicilies, in order to be revenged on the Duke of Calabria, who opposed his wishes to negociate for his sister, the Princess Isabella of Naples, and scornfully

rejected an alliance, to accomplish which Sforza had meditated poisoning his own nephew, to whom the princess had been solemnly promised.

664. How did Piero de Medici offend the Florentines?

By placing himself in the power of the French; after which he was ungraciously received at the council, which alarmed him so much that he instantly left Florence for Bologna.

665. What was the effect of this cowardly and impolitic retreat?

Both friends and enemies imagined him culpable, as they justly concluded he dreaded deserved punishment, or he would not have deserted his country when she so greatly needed his presence.

666. Were the consequences of this step disastrous to the fortunes of the Medici?

Yes; the council being prejudiced, passed sentence on him as a criminal, seized his estate, and sold by public auction that prodigious mass of moveables, pictures, antiques, and manuscripts, which had taken seventy years to collect. The grandeur of the house of Medici never appeared with so brilliant an effect as during the three weeks it was abandoned to pillage.

667. Who was elected gonfaloniere after Charles left Florence?

Bernardo Neri, a secret friend of the Medici; but his attempts to serve their interest were frustrated by Savanarola, who elevated men of the lowest rank to the most honourable offices in the state, under the plea of removing the antipathy existing between the nobility

and the populace: these measures had a contrary effect, the nobles resented what they considered an insult, and the hostile feelings of both parties increased.

668. How had the Medici essentially promoted the prosperity of the Florentines?

By supplying the public treasury from their own coffers, and importing corn from Cairo and the coast of Barbary when famine was general in Italy.

669. What detracted from the popularity of Savanarola?

The scarcity of the season, empty granaries, and inability to furnish supplies.

670. How did Piero improve this civil dissension?

He received intimation from Neri, and laid a scheme to surprise the Florentines by midnight, at the head of the troops of Bartolomo de Salviano, head of the family of Orsini.

671. What defeated the project?

Paulo Vitelli, commanding the Florentine army, chanced to arrive at the city-gate on his way from Pisa, the moment before the enemy; suspecting the design, he, with great presence of mind, drew up the bridge himself, shut the city-gate, and gave the alarm.

672. Relate the subsequent fortunes of the Medici.

The eldest of the three brothers entered as a volunteer the troops of Louis the Twelfth. Giuliano sought retirement with the Petrucci of Sienna. And the youngest, Cardinal de Medici, who did not take the name of his benefice, made the tour of Europe.

673. When did the Medici make their fourth attempt to regain Florence?

In 1501. General Vitelli having been executed on false accusations, internal divisions favoured their return ; but the choice of perpetual dictator fell on Piero de Soderini, a man of judgment and liberality.

674. What finally extinguished Piero de Medici's hopes of restoration ?

The death of the Orsini ; at the feast of Senegaglia, they fell by the treacherous hand of the Duke Valentino, victims to their attachment to the house of Medici : Piero did not long survive them.

675. Where did the cardinal receive the news of his brother's death ?

At Rome. Here the policy of Soderini restored to him the manuscripts of the library of his family, in order that he might have no further pretext for returning to Florence.

676. How did Cardinal de Medici eventually effect his entry into Florence after a banishment of eighteen years ?

A strong party was raised in his favour by his sister, Lucretia de Medici, who was married to Giacopo Salviati ; but the determination of Pope Giulio to recover all the states beyond the Alps in the possession of France, presented the fifth opportunity. Giulio enlisted his services by creating him legate of Bologna—a commission the cardinal gladly accepted, to escape the importunities of his creditors. At the battle of Ravenna he was taken prisoner, but escaping by the assistance of Rinaldo Zacti and Visimbardi, he bribed the Spaniards at Mantua, and triumphantly made his entrance into Florence.

677. When was the Cardinal de Medici elected pope ?

Three months after his return to Florence.

678. What caused him to assume the name of Leo?

The importance he superstitiously attached to a dream his mother had before his birth.

679. On whom did he confer the vacant cap?

His cousin Giulio de Medici, a knight of Rhodes. On the same day he presented him with the archbishopric of Florence.

680. What honours did the pope reserve for his brother Giuliano?

The sovereign dukedom of Milan; but the death of Giuliano, who had advanced so far as Florence at the head of his troops, diverted this prompt measure for expelling the French from that duchy.

681. Who claimed his attention at this juncture?

Alfonsina degl'Orsini, who sought the aggrandisement of her son, the young Lorenzo. Her importunity, and the hostility of the Duke d'Urbino, who, though a vassal, had opposed the Medici at Florence, and negotiated with France in a manner prejudicial to their interests, determined the pope to appoint his nephew to the generalship of the league.

682. With what French king did Pope Leo make a treaty?

Francis the First, at Bologna. This arrested the progress of the French, who had passed the Alps, and made several conquests.

683. How did Leo requite the services of Cardinal Petrucci, who had been his chief supporter in obtaining the papal chair?

By base ingratitude; having banished his house

from Sienna, and made the cardinal his enemy, he caused him to be strangled by an Ethiopian.

684. How many cardinals did Pope Leo create in one day ?

Thirty-one, to revenge himself on the sacred college, which rebelled against his exactions : of this number eight were of noble birth ; and the principal, Pompey Colonna, proved the most dangerous enemy to the house of Medici.

685. To whom was the duchy of Urbin assigned ?

Lorenzo de Medici ; the pope despatched the Duke of Albania to Francis the First, to negotiate the marriage of Lorenzo and the heiress of Bologna, promising to reward him with the command of the first league against the Turks. The Princess of Florence was received with great pomp ; she died at the birth of her daughter, *Katherine de Medici* ; and the melancholy intelligence reached Rome at the moment when a courier arrived from Venice with the news of Selim having seized Egypt and Syria.

686. What caused the death of Lorenzo ?

Intemperance. The Cardinal de Medici was appointed his successor at Florence : his measures were as lenient as Lorenzo's had been arbitrary.

687. Who poisoned Pope Leo ?

Barnaby Malespina. Never was pope more lamented. His liberality, eloquence, wit, and learning had gained him the love and admiration of all classes. His Latin verses were critically good ; but the elegance with which he wrote and spoke the Tuscan tongue was unparalleled ; his knowledge of history was extensive, and his criticisms were considered infallible.

688. Describe the reign and character of Amurath the Second.

Cantemir, in his History of the Ottoman Empire, says, "Sultan Murad, or Amurath, lived forty-nine, and reigned thirty years, six months, and eight days. He was a just and valiant prince, of a great soul, patient of labours, learned, merciful, religious, charitable; a lover and encourager of the studious, and of all who excelled in any art or science; a good emperor, and a great general. No man obtained more or greater victories than Amurath. Belgrade alone withstood his attacks. Under his reign, the soldier was ever victorious, the citizen rich and secure. If he subdued any country, his first care was to build moschs and caravansaras, hospitals and colleges. Every year he gave a thousand pieces of gold to the sons of the prophet, and sent two thousand five hundred to the religious persons of Mecca, Medina, and Jerusalem." This portrait is transcribed from the historian of the Ottoman empire; but the justice and moderation of Amurath are attested by his conduct, and acknowledged by the Christians, who consider a prosperous reign and a peaceful death as the reward of his singular merits.

689. What testimony do Chalcondyles, Ducas, and Marinus Barictius bear to the noble character of Amurath?

"He never engaged in war till he was justified by a previous and adequate provocation. The victorious sultan was disarmed by submission; and in the observance of treaties, his word was inviolate and sacred."

690. What is the most striking feature in the life and character of Amurath?

The double abdication of the Turkish throne.

691. Did infirmity warn the royal philosopher of the vanity of human greatness ?

No ; he was only forty years old when he resigned the sceptre to his son, and retired in the zenith of his military glory to the Zichidæ of Magnesia.

692. How was his dream of enthusiasm awakened ?

By the Hungarian invasion ; and his obedient son was the foremost to urge the public danger and the wishes of the people. Under the banner of their veteran leader, the Janizaries fought and conquered ; but he withdrew from the field of Varna, again to pray, to fast, and to turn round in endless rotation with his Magnesian brethren.

693. Name the second occasion on which these religious performances were interrupted.

The inexperience of the youthful ruler was disdained by the victorious army ; the city of Adrianople was abandoned to rapine and slaughter ; and the unanimous divan implored his presence to appease the tumult, and prevent the rebellion of the Janizaries.

694. Did Amurath effect this ?

Yes ; at the well-known voice of their master, they trembled and obeyed ; and the reluctant sultan was compelled to support his splendid servitude, until, at the end of four years, he was relieved by the angel of death.

695. Of what is Amurath alone an example ?

Of a prince, who, in the full liberty of choice, after the trial of empire and solitude, has *repeated* his preference of a private life. Other monarchs have been tempted by age or disease, misfortune or caprice, to descend from the throne, and have repented their irretrievable step in the leisure of retirement.

696. With whom did Eugenius form a league?

Philip, Duke of Burgundy; the maritime republics of Venice and Genoa, the kingdoms of Hungary and Poland, the Scythians and Sarmatians, and some private warriors of France and Germany who enlisted under the "holy banner."

697. What was the conduct of the Byzantines?

The Greek emperor, with a spirit unknown to his fathers, engaged to guard the Bosphorus, and to sally from Constantinople at the head of his national and mercenary troops.

698. Who was king of Poland and Hungary?

Ladislaus, usually written Wladislaus to distinguish him from his rival the infant Ladislaus of Austria: this young and ambitious soldier passed the Danube, and led an army of his confederate troops as far as Sophia, the capital of the Bulgarian kingdom. In this expedition two signal victories may be justly ascribed to the valour and conduct of John Huniades, a hero whose name was popular among the Christians, and formidable to the Turks.

699. When was the battle of Warna?

A.D. 1444, after the violation of the treaty on the part of the Christians. At a moment when the advantage appeared to be on his enemies' side, Amurath beheld his Turkish wings broken, and turned to follow his flying squadrons; but a veteran Janizary seized his horse's bridle,—and he had the magnanimity to pardon and reward the soldier who dared to perceive the terror, and arrest the flight of his sovereign. The king of Hungary was stopped in his career, whilst rushing forward in the confidence of victory, by the impenetrable phalanx of Janizaries; his horse was

pierced by the javelin of Amurath ; he fell among the spears of the infantry ; and a Turkish soldier proclaimed with a loud voice, “ Hungarians, behold the head of your king !”

700. Was the death of Ladislaus the signal of defeat ?

Yes ; on his return Huniades deplored his error and the public loss : he strove to rescue the royal body, till he was overwhelmed by the tumultuous crowd of the victors and the vanquished ; and the last efforts of his courage were exerted to save the remnant of his Walachian cavalry.

701. What was the loss of the Christians at the battle of Warna ?

Ten thousand : the loss of the Turks, more considerable in numbers, bore a smaller proportion to their total strength ; yet the philosophic sultan was not ashamed to confess, that his ruin must be the consequence of a second and similar victory.

702. How did Amurath record his triumph ?

By commanding a column to be erected on the spot where Ladislaus had fallen ; the modest inscription, instead of accusing the rashness, recorded the valour, and bewailed the misfortune, of the Hungarian youth.

703. Name two principal actors on the field of Warna.

The Cardinal Julian, and John Huniades.

704. Name the seven chiefs who have deserved, without wearing, a crown.

Belisarius, Narses, Gonsalvo de Cordova, William first Prince of Orange, Alexander, Duke of Parma, John Huniades, and George Castriot, or Scanderbeg.

705. When did Scanderbeg revolt from the Turks?

A.D. 1443. George Castriot was the son of the hereditary prince of Epirus, or Albania: his Turkish appellation *Iskender beg*, or, the lord Alexander, is an indelible memorial of his glory and servitude. His ingratitude to Amurath is not palliated by his historians.

706. Who was the last of the Roman or Greek emperors?

Constantine, the son of Manuel; he ascended the throne four years after the Hungarian crusade, on the decease of John Palæologus, A.D. 1448.

707. What is said of his ambassador Phranza?

He was an historian: his embassies to the different courts, were negotiations for the marriage of the emperor. His decisions were in favour of a Georgian princess.

708. Did Constantine value the friendship of this faithful servant?

Yes, he treated him with unbounded confidence, and welcomed his return with these words: "Since the death of my mother and of Cantacuzene, who alone advised me without interest or passion, I am surrounded by men whom I can neither love, nor trust, nor esteem. You are not a stranger to Lucas Notaras, the great admiral; obstinately attached to his own sentiments, he declares, both in private and public, that his sentiments are the absolute measure of my thoughts and actions. The rest of the courtiers are swayed by their personal or factious views: and how can I consult the monks on questions of policy and marriage? I have yet much employment for your diligence and fidelity. In the spring you shall engage one of my brothers to

solicit the succour of the western powers; from the Morea, you shall sail to Cyprus on a particular commission; and from thence proceed to Georgia to receive and conduct the future empress."

709. How were the public and private designs of the emperor interrupted?

By the Turkish war, which involved the empire in ruin.

710. What was the character of Mahomet the Second?

Mahomet, the son of the second Amurath, in his youth was bigoted, but an aspiring genius and the experience of age, freed him from narrow sentiments; and though a devout disciple of the Koran, he disdained to acknowledge the prophet his superior. Mahomet spoke fluently in Turkish, Arabic, Persian, Chaldean or Hebrew, Latin, and Greek.

711. When did Mahomet make preparations for besieging Constantinople?

A.D. 1452.

712. Describe the great cannon of Mahomet?

He employed a Danish or Hungarian engineer, and his artillery surpassed any before used. A foundry was established at Adrianople; and in three months a piece of brass ordnance was produced of stupendous and almost incredible magnitude; a measure of twelve palms is assigned to the bore; and the stone bullet weighed about six hundred pounds.

713. Where was the first experiment tried?

Before the new palace: the explosion was felt or heard in a circuit of a hundred furlongs: the ball, by the force of gunpowder, was driven above a mile; and

on the spot where it fell, it buried itself above a fathom deep in the ground.

714. How was this destructive engine conveyed from place to place?

On a frame constructed of thirty waggons, drawn by a team of sixty oxen: two hundred were stationed on either side, to poise and support the rolling weight: two hundred and fifty workmen marched before to smooth the way and repair the bridges: the journey of one hundred and fifty miles, occupied nearly two months.

715. What was the force of the Turks?

Philephus, who upbraids the pusillanimity of the nations who had yielded to a handful of barbarians, numbered only sixty thousand horse, and twenty thousand foot: this was probably the regular establishment of the Capiculi or Palatine troops, who marched with the prince, and were paid from the royal treasury; but the bashaws in their respective governments maintained or levied a provincial militia, styled Seratculi: many lands were held by a military tenure; many volunteers were attracted by the hope of spoil; and the sound of the holy trumpet invited a swarm of hungry and fearless fanatics.

716. What is the account of other historians?

Ducas, Chalcondyles, and Leonard of Chios magnify the mass of the Turkish powers to three or four hundred thousand men; but Phranza was a less remote and more accurate judge, and his precise definition is two hundred and fifty-eight thousand.

717. What was the navy of the besiegers?

It only consisted of three hundred and twenty sail;

and of these, not more than eighteen could be rated as galleys of war, the rest being store-ships and transports.

718. Name the force of the Greeks.

In her last decay, Constantinople was still peopled with more than a hundred thousand inhabitants; but these numbers are found in the accounts, not of war, but of captivity; mechanics, priests, and women, and of men devoid of that spirit which even women have often exerted for the common safety.

719. To whom were the lists of those able and willing to bear arms, entrusted?

To Phranza, who, after a diligent calculation, informed his master, with grief and surprise, that the national defence was reduced to four thousand nine hundred and seventy Romans.

720. What succour arrived from the Christian princes?

Their generosity was slow and tardy. Early in April, five ships arrived, one bearing the imperial flag, the remaining four from the Genoese; but some accession had been previously derived from a body of two thousand strangers, under the command of John Justiniani, a noble Genoese.

721. Why did Mahomet transport his navy overland?

The reduction of the city appeared hopeless, unless a double attack could be made from the harbour, as well as from the land.

722. How was this bold and marvellous plan executed?

A level way was covered with a broad platform of

strong and solid planks ; and to render them slippery and smooth, they were anointed with the fat of sheep and oxen. Fourscore light galleys and brigantines, of fifty and thirty oars, were disembarked on the Bosphorus shore, arranged successively on rollers, and drawn forwards by the power of men and pulleys. Two guides and pilots were stationed at the helm and prow of each vessel, the sails were unfurled to the wind, and the labour was cheered by song and acclamation.

723. What distance did the Turkish fleet travel by land ?

Ten miles of ground, which, until myriads were employed on its surface, was uneven and covered with thickets. In one night, it painfully climbed the hill, steered over the plain, and was launched from the declivity into the shallow waters of the harbour, far above the molestation of the deeper vessels of the Greeks.

724. What was the state of the city at this juncture ?

After a siege of forty days, the fate of Constantinople could no longer be averted. The diminutive garrison was exhausted by a double attack. The fortifications, which had stood for ages against hostile violence, were dismantled on all sides by the Ottoman cannon ; many breaches were opened ; and near the gate of St. Romanus four towers had been levelled with the ground.

725. When did Mahomet issue his final orders ?

On the twenty-seventh of May, in the presence of the military chiefs, heralds were dispersed through the camp to proclaim the duty, and the motives of the enterprise ; and the menaces of the sultan were expressed in the Oriental style, that “the fugitives and

deserters, had they the wings of a bird, should not escape from his inexorable justice."

726. How did Constantine fall ?

The emperor accomplished all the duties of a general and a soldier, was long seen, and finally lost. The nobles, who fought round his person, sustained, till their last breath, the honourable names of Palæologus and Cantacuzene. His mournful exclamation was heard, " Cannot there be found a Christian to cut off my head ? " And his last fear was that of falling alive into the hands of the infidels. The prudent despair of Constantine cast away the purple: amidst the tumult, he fell by an unknown hand, and his body was buried under a mountain of slain.

727. How many days did the siege last ?

Fifty-three days: it defied the power of Chosroes, the chagan, and the caliphs; was irretrievably subdued by the arms of Mahomet the Second. Her empire, only, had been subverted by the Latins; her religion was trampled in the dust by her Moslem conquerors.

728. Was St. Sophia despoiled ?

Yes, of the oblations of ages; and the gold and silver, the pearls and jewels, the vases and sacerdotal ornaments, were pillaged, and the images and paintings were destroyed. At the principal door of St. Sophia, Mahomet alighted from his horse, and entered the dome; and such was his jealous regard for that monument of his glory, that on observing a zealous Mussulman in the act of breaking the marble pavement, he admonished him with his cimeter, that, if the spoil and captives were granted to the soldiers, the public and private buildings had been reserved for the prince.

729. How did Mahomet appropriate the metropolis of the eastern church ?

By his command, it was transformed into a mosch. The rich and portable instruments of superstition had been removed, the crosses were thrown down, and the walls, which had been covered with images and mosaics, were washed and purified, and restored to a state of naked simplicity. The muezin, or crier, ascended the most lofty turret, and proclaimed the ezan or public invitation, in the name of God and his prophet ; the Imam preached, and Mahomet the Second performed the *namas* of prayer and thanksgiving on the great altar, where the Christian mysteries had so lately been celebrated before the last of the Cæsars.

730. What object did Mahomet next visit ?

The august but desolate mansion of a hundred successors of the great Constantine, which, in a few hours, had been stripped of the pomp of royalty.

731. Did the vicissitudes of human greatness force melancholy reflections on the mind of the sultan ?

Yes, he is said to have repeated an elegant distich of Persian poetry : "The spider has woven its web in the imperial palace ; and the owl hath sung her watch-song on the towers of Afrasiab."

732. How was the body of Constantine discovered ?

By the golden eagles embroidered on his shoes. Two Janizaries claimed the honour and reward of his death. The Greeks acknowledged, with tears, the head of their late emperor ; and after exposing the bloody trophy, Mahomet bestowed on his rival the honours of a decent funeral.

733. How was the Morea lost ?

After a respite of seven years, during which the quarrels of the two surviving brothers of the name of Palaeologus disturbed the peace of the kingdom, Mahomet declared himself the friend of Demetrius, and took possession of Sparta ostensibly on behalf of the Greek ; but forgetting the path of honour in the broad way of conquest, he immediately appropriated it to himself.

734. In what year was the death of Mahomet ?

A.D. 1481, after the siege and sack of Otranto. His lofty genius aspired to the conquest of Italy : he was possessed of a strong city and a capacious harbour ; and the same reign might have been decorated with the trophies of the new and the ancient Roman.

735. Name the four principal causes of the ruin of Rome, which continued to operate in a period of more than a thousand years.

First, the injuries of time and nature, hurricanes and earthquakes, fires and inundations ; second, the hostile attacks of the barbarians and Christians ; third, the use and abuse of the materials ; and fourth, the domestic quarrels of the Romans.

736. When does the history of Germany assume a double aspect ?

With the rise, growth, and subsequent predominance of the house of Austria.

737. What is said of the golden bull of Charles the Fourth ?

It was the first among the fundamental laws of the empire, and was published by the emperor, with the consent and concurrence of the electors, princes, counts, nobility, and *towns imperial*.

738. How did this bull affect the power of the crown?

It resembled all the prior regulations of the Germanic constitution in leaving the emperor the elective, the limited, and almost the inefficient head of an aristocracy of princes.

739. Did this form of government work well?

No, each prince remained the real monarch of his own dominions; and the vast strength and resources of Germany, dissipated and divided among a variety of interests, could at no time, even by the most able princes of the house of Austria, be combined and wielded against the enemies of the empire, with their proper and natural effect.

740. On what occasions was the majesty of the emperor preserved and displayed?

At public banquets and state festivals the princes and potentates of Germany officiated as his domestics; the count-palatine of the Rhine, as his steward, placed the dishes on his table; the margrave of Brandenburgh, as his chamberlain, brought the golden ewer and basin to wash; the king of Bohemia, as his cup-bearer, presented the wine at his repast; and each elector had his appropriate duty of apparent servility and homage.

741. What interesting annals are connected with the history of the house of Austria?

Those relating to the formation of the Helvetic confederacy, and the growth and establishment of the independence and political consequence of Switzerland.

742. What three nations have been characterised by their virtue and patriotism?

The early Romans, the Spartans, and the Swiss. We

speak of the hardy discipline and the inflexible virtue of Sparta,—of “the unconquerable mind and freedom’s holy flame,” when we think of ancient Rome ; but it is in Switzerland we seek the unbought charms of native innocence, and the sublime simplicity of severe and contented virtue.

743. How are the Swiss regarded by other nations ?

They are respected, even amid their comparative poverty and rudeness ; and described as heroes who, though too few to be feared by the weak, were too brave to be insulted by the strong.

744. How did they meet the invasion of the house of Austria ?

Duke Leopold came, according to his language in his council of war, to take some by surprise, to defeat others, to seize on many, to surround them all, and thus infallibly extirpate the whole nation. Three separate attacks were prepared, and the duke himself conducted the main army ; but he was met at the straits of Morgarten by the band of brothers. Like one of the avalanches of their mountains, they descended upon his host, and beat back into confusion, defeat, and destruction, himself, his knights, and his companions—the disdainful chivalry, who had little considered the formidable nature of men, who could bear to die, but not to be subdued ; men, whom nature herself protected, by encompassing them with her inaccessible mountains, her tremendous precipices, and all her stupendous masses of eternal winter.

745. When did the three forest cantons admit a fourth canton ?

Twenty-five years after the assertion of their own independence.

746. When was the union of the eight ancient cantons perfected ?

It was gradually formed in the course of half a century from 1307. These were afterwards joined by five other cantons ; thus in two centuries the Helvetic confederacy was augmented to thirteen.

747. Did the oppressors again collect to overwhelm this virtuous confederacy ?

Seventy-one years after the defeat at Morgarten, another duke of Austria, a second Leopold, with a second host of lords and knights, and their retainers, experienced once more a defeat near the walls of Sempach.

748. Was the battle long suspended ?

Yes, though the Austrian knights were unwieldy in their armour, they were inaccessible to the weapons of the Swiss ; they deserved a better cause, for they were brave, and not to be broken.

749. How was a breach made in this wall of mailed warriors ?

“I will open a passage,” said the heroic Arnold, a knight of Underwalden ; “provide for my wife and children ; dear countrymen and confederates, honour my race !” then throwing himself upon the Austrian pikes, he buried them in his bosom, bore them to the ground with his ponderous weight, and his companions rushed over his expiring body into the ranks of the enemy, and the host was carried by assault.

750. How were they regarded by the empire ?

They received privileges and assistance so long as the empire was jealous of the house of Austria.

751. Name the most disagreeable characteristic of the people of Switzerland.

Their constant appearance as mercenaries in the armies of foreign countries.

752. What excuse may be urged in extenuation ?

That in a poor country emigration is the natural resource of all whose activity and talents are above the ordinary level ; that the profession of arms was the obvious choice of those who could pretend to no superiority but in the qualities that constitute the military character.

753. May this also be considered an act of policy ?

Yes ; while part of the population is employed in the service of the different monarchies of Europe, a part which can always be recalled, Switzerland supports at the expense of other nations the disciplined troops which are necessary to its security.

754. What may be almost exclusively remarked of Switzerland ?

It never produced a great legislator, though its government and religion have been adequate to the wants and wishes of a brave and artless people.

755. How long did the confederative system preserve comparatively, the independence and honour, security and happiness of the community ?

Nearly five hundred years ; until they perished amid the ruthless and unprincipled invasions of revolutionary France, and the general ruin of Europe.

756. Of what were the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries the era ?

Inventions and discoveries.

757. Name some of the principal.

The art of turning linen into paper; the art of printing; the general application of gunpowder to the purposes of war; and the strange properties of the magnetic needle, rendered subservient to the purposes of navigation.

758. To what do these era conduct us?

To that which was marked by the revival of learning and the Reformation.

759. What was the general situation of Europe at this period?

The very civilisation of society appeared to be threatened, by the train of events presented in the East; the progress of the Turks, Bajazet, Tamerlane, and the extraordinary achievements of these tremendous conquerors. Then the revival of the Ottoman power; and at last the destruction of the eastern empire, of Constantinople itself.

760. What was the effect of the fall of Constantinople on western Europe?

It became too late a subject of universal terror and affliction. Yet, from the calamities of the empire, some benefit resulted to the world. The scholars of the east forsook the exclusive atmosphere, to escape the terrors of arms and oppression, and breathe in the universities of the west, where freedom, affluence, dignity, and leisure could alone be found.

761. Is the revival of learning at this period a subject of importance and extent?

Yes, the great city of the Caesars was finally subdued at a period when the western nations were prepared for the reception of her treasure of literature, an

intellectual spoil which had not attracted the attention of the uncivilised Latins who held it in their possession in the thirteenth century.

762. What hazardous experiment was the result of the spirit of inquiry, which pervaded society at the beginning of the sixteenth century, when the dawning of science dispelled the darkness of superstition ?

The opposition to the papacy, which had always existed, now assumed a more formidable aspect. The condition of Europe was essentially improved, and the cause of the human mind was asserted by those who had a prospect of seeing their laudable exertions crowned with success.

763. Could a reformation, the principles of which attacked the church of Rome, not only in its discipline but in its doctrine, not only in its practice but in its faith, be accomplished without the most serious evils ?

No ; it was evident much misery must result from the natural intolerance of the human mind, from the materials, in which evidence could not be demonstrative, and from the general ignorance and rudeness of society. Europe had become civilised, and even at this period was rapidly improving, but the mild beams of literature were but locally diffused, and the searching ray of science was intercepted by the clouds and mists of prejudice.

764. What was to compensate mankind for the consequences of disputes and controversies which *unavoidably* were referred to the decision of the sword, and which, by involving the question of earthly politics and ecclesiastical revenue, called forth a conflict of passions, barbarities so astonishing, and stupidity so palpable, as to present a problem in the science of human nature to succeeding ages ?

The benefit that it was probable would result was above all price: the disputants must eventually relinquish the decisions of the pope or general councils, and appeal to the Bible itself; the sacred text would be, therefore, examined, criticised, and understood. In all probability a purer faith would be established; doctrines would no longer be taken upon authority; religion would no longer consist so much in vain ceremonies, and passive ignorance; devotion would become a reasonable sacrifice; and the Gospel be a second time promulgated to an erring and sinful world.

765. Were these evils and benefits really experienced?

Yes; the Roman Catholics rested their system on the decisions of an “infallible” judge, never doubted that truth was on their side, and openly called on the civil power to repel all who rose up against it. The Protestants, no less confident that their doctrine was well-founded, required, with equal ardour, the princes of their party to check such as presumed to impugn or oppose it. Persecutions ensued, and the present was a scene of bloodshed. The future was illuminated by the principles of the early reformers, who, by their virtue, piety, and fortitude benefited the world.

766. What is said of the reformer Huss?

He was burned to death at the Council of Constance; but during the brief period of his influence, he had persecuted his accusers to the utmost of his power.

767. What was the effect of the execution of Huss and Jerome of Prague on the heroic Ziska?

He was driven into paroxysms of indignation and gloom, until roused by Wenceslaus to resist and punish the unprincipled persecutors and destroyers.

768. Did Ziska, memorable for virtue, talent and intrepidity, become a persecutor in his turn?

Yes, he gave credit to charges without examination, and put some to the sword, and condemned others to the flames.

769. Was there a similar blemish in the character of the celebrated reformer Calvin?

In the case of Servetus, whom he caused to be condemned to death; and in his letter to the protector, Somerset, he describes two sects who differed from him, and says, "they ought both to have the sword drawn against them."

770. Give another instance of the inconsistencies which blended in the most enlightened of the age.

If we enumerate some of the most favourable specimens of mankind, vigorous in their understandings, cultivated in their minds, gentle in their nature, conversant with the world, refined, pure, and perfect as could be found, the same spirit of intolerance is breathed forth on the great controversial question. Francis the First united all the milder virtues with the honourable and gallant feelings of a gentleman and a soldier, and yet he could declare in a public assembly, "that if one of his hands were infected with heresy, he would cut it off with the other, and would not spare even his own children if found guilty of that crime;" and immediately after, six of his subjects were burned. Francis was generous and intrepid; and he lived upon the applause of men resembling himself. He prided himself on his sincerity. What he said was the genuine effusion of his own mind, and the echo of the general sentiment.

771. Was the mania of persecution confined to the warm and impetuous?

No ; we have an example in Sir Thomas More to the contrary, a man amiable in manner, invincible in integrity, gentle, accomplished ; yet, when in favour, he pressed the king to put the laws against heretics in execution.

772. Name the reformer most exemplary for the mildness of his temperament.

Melancthon ; yet he could approve and justify the conduct of Calvin in his atrocious punishment of Servetus.

773. What is related of Edward the Sixth ?

His youth had not admitted sufficient progress in the doctrines of intolerance ; and he could not be persuaded to sign the warrant against Joan of Kent, objecting to “a piece of cruelty too like that which they had condemned in Papists, to burn any for their consciences.”

774. Did Cranmer reason away these sentiments of mercy and justice ?

He argued and refined, and produced his authorities ; but his reasons rather silenced than satisfied the king, who set his hand to the warrant with tears in his eyes, saying to Cranmer, that if he did wrong, since it was in submission to his authority, he should answer for it to God.

775. How did this appeal affect the archbishop ?

He paused ; he might well pause. The humane terror and artless simplicity of his youthful sovereign presented the horror of the scene more vividly to the imagination and the understanding of Cranmer. The sentence was delayed, was suspended for a year, but was at last executed.

776. Was the fallacious project of uniting the two churches entertained ?

Yes ; Charles the Fifth published a system, called the Interim, which he fondly imagined, being a medium between the two parties, might be acceded to by both.

777. Did the pope countenance the emperor's theory ?

He was surprised that a man who knew the world like Charles should indulge for a moment so vain a delusion ; and observed, that it was unnecessary to disturb himself about the success of a project, which, not belonging to any party, would be neglected by all, and soon forgotten ; and such indeed was the event.

778. Mention the immediate blessings that resulted from the Reformation.

The opening of the Bible, the establishment of a purer faith, emancipation from the authority of the pope, and the right of private judgment.

779. Name the advantages that remotely followed this freedom of the mind.

The world of science was thrown open, and the natural faculties of men were exercised.

780. How was the influence of the Reformation felt ?

First, on the political situation of the states of Europe ; and secondly, on the progress of knowledge.

781. What characterised Wickliffe ?

His exalted merit surpassed all other reformers ; and it is extraordinary that he was allowed to die as peaceably as if he had not been wiser than the rest of the world.

782. Must we conclude, that the Scotch reformer Knox was the ferocious, unfeeling barbarian some historians represent him ?

No ; though vehement, and, on the subject of popery,

intolerant, he possessed many of the virtues and merits of the English and continental reformers.

783. Did the persecutions against Roman Catholics, in the reign of Elizabeth, vie with the atrocious massacres of the Protestants by Queen Mary and Bishop Bonner?

Yes, one hundred and sixty were put to death in her reign.

784. What important lesson may be derived from the sixteenth century?

The folly and crime of attempting foreign conquest, when no provocation demands it in the cause of justice.

785. Is the era of the civil and religious wars peculiarly interesting?

Yes; the striking events, and splendid actors of this great and real tragedy, present a drama too powerful and impressive to be equalled in imagination.

786. Were the great families of France a subject of continual dread to the reigning prince?

They were perfectly able to shake the monarchy; and the abilities of their princes were fully exercised in keeping their power within bounds. Francis the First, the idol of Frenchmen, carried on a regular system of inspection over his nobles and their proceedings in every place and province of France. "Beware of the Guises!" was his dying injunction to his son, Henry the Second. Subsequent events showed the necessity for the caution.

787. Who was queen-mother in the succeeding reigns?

Catherine de Medicis, a woman of great natural ability.

788. Were the Guises connected with the reigning family?

By marriage. The Prince of Condé and the constable Montmorency were competitors for the administration; and the policy of Catherine endeavoured to maintain the authority herself, by dividing and opposing them to each other.

789. What crime stains the annals of the court of Charles the Ninth?

The massacre of St. Bartholomew,—a murder actually conceived, and almost entirely perpetrated, by the first people of rank in France. This abominable court regularly deliberated, contrived, and executed, slowly, and systematically, the death of every person of consequence, who belonged to the Huguenot party. This massacre was defended at Rome by the eloquent Muretus, and sanctioned by public authority at Paris.

790. What was the celebrated combination called the League?

An association formed by the Duke of Guise, who had ability enough to get himself considered as the defender of the Roman Catholic religion, and form a union in support of it, without any authority from the crown. There is a spirit of devotion to the Roman Catholic religion, and of loyalty to the king, in the celebrated formulary of the league; but there is an unlimited obedience, distinctly acknowledged to the head of the league, with these remarkable words annexed, “without exception of persons.” Thus an obedience was acknowledged, unknown to the constitution of the realm, without bounds; and that ultimately attached itself, not to the king, but to the chief of the league, and to him alone, “without exception of persons.” The Duc de Guise succeeded Monsieur D’Humiers as

chief of the league ; and availing himself of the vices and indolence of the prince, improved every circumstance so successfully in his own favour, as almost to mount the throne, during the insurrection in Paris. The king escaped from the capital, and the duke's plans were frustrated by assassination,—the resource of a weak and cruel monarch, to preserve his crown, his liberty, and his life.

791. Does the history of the league seem to announce the unhappy events of modern times ?

Yes ; the account of the day of the barricadoes in Paris, the siege of the Louvre, the Swiss guards, the flight of the king, the tumultuous capital, the committees, and private feuds, might almost lead us to imagine it a detail of the transactions of the horrible French revolution.

792. What do these scenes exhibit ?

The workings of the two great passions, civil and religious hate. This singular era produced characters the most extraordinary ; fierce crimes and unbridled licentiousness, were accompanied with great courage and ability in the one sex, and with genius and spirit in the other.

793. What was the character of Henry of Navarre ?

This prince was born at Pau, in Bearn, inured to danger and difficulties from his youth, and accustomed to act on his own judgment ; his character was distinguished by prompt decision, persevering diligence, and unshaken courage. At thirteen he displayed much military talent, and is described as “ agreeable, polite, and engaging, conversing with discretion in mixed companies, where the court was the subject of discourse.” The queen, his mother, entrusted his education to La Gaucherie, a learned Calvinist. His personal attrac-

tions excited general admiration. Henry owed his success to his generous policy, and prudent magnanimity. “There was nothing narrow in his views, no ungovernable animosity that rankled in his memory; he forgot, he forgave, he offered favourable terms, he negotiated with all the fearless liberality of an elevated mind. The result was, that he was served by men who had been opponents and rebels, more faithfully than other princes have been, by their favourites and dependants.”

794. Enumerate some of the difficulties Henry had to contend with on his accession.

The first years of his reign were severe and trying. He was a Huguenot, and the nation could not therefore endure him to be king. He had been leagued with Henry, the former king, while that prince was stained with the blood of the Duke of Guise, the great object of national admiration. He had a disputed title, an able and experienced general to oppose him in Mayenne, who proclaimed the cardinal of Bourbon king; and he was exposed to the hostile interference of the Duke of Parma, at the head of the Spanish infantry, then the first in the world. After being compelled to leave Paris, and bravely combat for every inch of ground he conquered, he was deserted by one-half of the royal army, who were Catholics, which obliged him to relinquish the siege of Paris, and retreat into Normandy.

795. Where did he gain a final victory over the Duke of Mayenne?

At Ivri; previously to the battle, in the presence of his whole army, he addressed the Deity in prayer, after which he harangued his soldiers, concluding thus—“My lads, if you should lose your colours, rally towards this,” pointing to a plume of white feathers in his hat;

“you will always find it in the road to honour. God is with us !”

796. What was the state of society during the religious wars ?

Wraxall, in his history of these times, concludes with the lamentation, that he can only find three virtues then in existence,—“courage, friendship,” and, what was less to be expected, “filial obedience.” Such was the scanty practice of this age of profession !

797. What was the power of the states-general in this reign ?

The “Henriade” of Voltaire graphically describes them as “inefficient assemblies, where laws were proposed rather than executed, and where abuses were detailed with eloquence, but not remedied.”

798. Name the great deficiency in Henry’s government.

He laboured to be a father to his people, without attempting to improve the states-general ; he did not distinguish between the temporary blessing of a good king, and the lasting benefit of a good constitution.

799. What two great services are exceptions to this fault ?

First, by his own merits, which after his conquest rendered him the idol of the French nation, he prevented the renewal of the government of the fiefs. The civil wars had made the great nobles so powerful, and familiarised their followers to arms, that independent sovereignties might probably have been established if Henry the Fourth had not been on the throne.

Secondly, he procured for the Protestants the edict of Nantz, by the articles of which they were allowed to live everywhere in France, without molestation on

account of their private religious tenets. Thus ended the religious war which had desolated the country for nearly forty years.

800. What privileges did the twenty-seventh article of the edict give to Protestants ?

All Protestants (dissenters in France) were rendered eligible to all offices without exacting any oath from them, but "well and faithfully to serve their king in the discharge of their offices, and to observe the ordinance, as it has been observed at all times."

801. In what did this differ from the policy of our corporation and test acts in the same era ?

The test was civil, not religious.

802. Who was the zealous and unshaken counsellor of Henry ?

Maximilian de Bethune, known by the name of Sully, a man of the strictest honour and integrity, and the most disinterested attachment. When Henry ascended the throne he was twenty-six years of age, Bethune was but nineteen ; yet few older heads have displayed more wisdom than these two young men at this critical juncture.

Henry failed in domestic virtue ; and his passion for play, constantly, but in vain, called forth the remonstrances of the virtuous Sully. This monarch, dear in the memory of every Frenchman, perished by the hand of the assassin Ravaillac.

803. What preceded the first appearance of the Duke of Alva in the Netherlands ?

The contests between Philip the Second and his Dutch and Flemish subjects. The tyranny exercised over the Low Countries may be imputed to the bigotry of Philip, who introduced the inquisition and Spanish

soldiers into the fortified towns, deprived the Flemings of the free exercise of their religious opinions, and of the laws and privileges of their states and assemblies, leaving no visible head, in ecclesiastical matters, but the pope; and in civil affairs, no real authority but his own.

804. Who were the favourite instruments of his tyranny?

Cardinal Granvelle and the Duke of Alva; the former a violent but able statesman, acquainted with the country to be ruled, who acquired irresistible authority over the monarch and his cabinet, by his knowledge, and the distinct, decided, and consistent statement of his opinions.

805. What was the character of Alva?

He was the advocate of force, and advised instant coercion. The military conduct of Alva is remarkable. In the field, he was calm and considerate, as he was rash and intemperate in the cabinet. With an army of about fourteen thousand men, he disposed of the lives and privileges of the Flemings of all ranks at his pleasure, imprisoned two of the most popular and meritorious noblemen, erected a council of tumults, or council of blood, and destroyed, in a few months, by the hands of the executioner, more than one thousand eight hundred different individuals.

806. Who opposed the measures of the Duke of Alva?

The Duke of Feria; he was seconded by the Prince of Eboli: the wise counsels of these reasoning statesmen had little effect; the imperious nature of Philip was to be gratified; and he determined that the religious persuasion of these countries should be the same as his own. "You may lose them if you persist," said

one of his officers. "I would rather be without kingdoms," he replied, "than enjoy them with heresy."

807. What was the government of Margaret of Parma?

While in authority, she endeavoured to govern mildly, and composed the troubles of the Netherlands.

808. How did the Prince of Orange and the Flemish nobles resist their Spanish oppressors?

Temperately and regularly throughout this memorable contest—a contest of half-a-century. The great hero was the Prince of Orange,—the great delinquent, Philip the Second; the one a model, in private and in public, of everything that is good and great; and the other, of everything that is to be avoided and abhorred.

809. Name some of the Protestant German princes who came to the succour of the Prince of Orange.

The Count Palatine, the Duke of Wirtemberg, the Landgrave of Hesse, and some others.

810. Were the Flemings consistent or courageous?

No; they beheld their fellow-citizens executed by the Duke of Alva; the principles of their civil and religious liberty destroyed; had suffered the Prince of Orange and their patriotic leaders to fight their battles by means of German Protestants, and left the prince to devise payment for the troops without offering assistance; but the moment the loss of civil liberty produced its effect, and new taxes were levied, combinations were formed to resist the Spanish tyranny.

811. Was a generous and rational sympathy universal?

No; the degradation that could only be felt by the Flemings, when it interfered with petty interest, could

only rouse to resistance where selfish motives existed. The Walloon, or southern provinces, were not so commercial as the more maritime, and, therefore, did not so firmly resist the taxes of Alva.

812. What was the result ?

All would have been lost, had not Brabant and the more intelligent and invariably firm province of Utrecht stood firmly ; and after a struggle, which taught cruelty and oppression a lesson, Holland, Zealand, and five others of the more bold and virtuous provinces, became entirely independent. The southern observed a cold neutrality, and were even guilty of a species of hostility to the prince and the patriotic cause.

813. Did Philip begin to doubt the efficacy of force ?

Yes ; after Alva, with his soldiers and executioners, had been let loose upon the provinces for nearly six years together, he despatched a new governor to the Low Countries, in the person of Requesens, who might act on a more conciliatory system. Requesens was a man of ability and moderation. The last gave the Prince of Orange and the patriots the greatest apprehension, lest the Flemings should too readily forget the perfidy and cruelty of the Spaniards ; but Requesens not only came too late, but found it impossible to serve such a master as Philip.

814. When were the contending religious interests of Germany first adjusted ?

At the peace concluded at Passau, in 1555, in the close of Charles the Fifth's reign.

815. What were the causes of the thirty years' war ?

The dissension between the Lutheran and Calvinistic princes ; and the bigoted and arbitrary conduct of the house of Austria. The Protestant cause, well estab-

blished at Passau, on the death of Charles the Fifth, was afterwards nearly lost by the advantages which the Roman Catholic arms and politics derived from the divisions of the opposing parties.

816. Name some of the Austrian princes contemporary with this period.

Ferdinand the First, Maximilian, Rodolph, Matthias, and Ferdinand the Second.

817. What was the character of Maximilian?

He was just, wise, and benevolent ; he preserved the religious peace of the community, without destroying the religious freedom of the human mind ; as the head of the empire, he supported the rights and possessions of the Roman Catholics, whilst, as a Lutheran at heart, he protected the Protestants. A prince of the line of the intolerant house of Austria, Maximilian governed with a gentle but powerful hand, and presents a model for all those who are called upon to direct the affairs of mankind.

818. Name Maximilian's fatal error.

Leaving the education of his son and successor, Rodolph, to the discretion of his bigoted consort.

819. Who succeeded Rodolph?

Matthias, second son of Maximilian ; on the death of Albert, the third son, at Flanders, Ferdinand, son of Charles of Gratz, forced his cousin Matthias to resign the crown of Bohemia and the empire ; and, through the interest of Spain and the pope, had himself elected king. This event, so unhappy in its effects for all Europe, was followed by a general insurrection, and an assembly of the states, together with those of Silesia, Moravia, and Luzatia, who joined in deposing Ferdinand.

820. To whom did they offer the crown?

First to the Duke of Saxony, who refused it, and then to the Elector Palatine, who accepted it.

821. What was the result?

The firmness and abilities of the elector were tried, and found wanting; and the Protestant cause had been lost, if a hero of another cast, Gustavus Adolphus, the illustrious Swede, had not appeared as the defender of the civil and religious liberties of Europe.

822. Name the difficulties the Swedish king had to contend with.

His country could only furnish for the enterprise her two great products, "Iron and man,—the soldier and his sword." These, with Gustavus for their leader, might have disposed of Europe some centuries before; but the invention of gunpowder and the progress of science, had made war a question, not merely of physical force, but of expense; and the snowy regions of Sweden were not capable of supporting a large military establishment, either at home or abroad, and little fitted to contend with the resources of the house of Austria.

823. Did the counsellors of Gustavus urge him to leave the emperor and the German electors to vindicate their own liberties?

Yes; but the house of Austria had already distantly menaced the kingdom of Sweden, whose interests were, therefore, inseparable from those of the Protestant princes of Germany, and Gustavus chose the alternative of coming forward as a leader of the combination against Ferdinand the Second, rather than waiting the summons of the general cause as an auxiliary.

824. What was the character of this war?

It was both just and generous ; and the campaigns of Gustavus, his victories, his death, and the campaigns of the generals he left behind him, present a picture of the nobler qualities of man triumphant.

825. Did victory crown the efforts of Gustavus ?

Yes ; unlike Charles the Wise, whose work perished with the master-hand, this greater than great man measured not success by a single arm. Gustavus fell, but his cause prevailed ; the mortal part of the hero lay covered with honourable wounds, and breathless, on the plains of Lützen ; but his genius still lived in the perfect soldiers he had created, the great generals he had formed, the wise minister he had employed, and the senate and people of Sweden, whom he had elevated to his own high sense of honour and duty. The subjects of a sovereign who united the virtues of a Christian, a soldier, and a statesman, did not prove unworthy. The loss of their beloved prince inspired them with fresh ardour in the cause he had bequeathed to their valour ; and had Gustavus Adolphus lived, he would have seen the very ground on which he first landed with only fourteen thousand men, to oppose the regular and numerous armies of Austria, publicly ceded to his own crown.

826. What prince distinguished himself at the battle of Lützen ?

Bernard the Great, one of the most able military commanders of his age ; in thirty-four engagements, victory crowned his efforts, and proved inconstant to him on one occasion only. On receiving intelligence of the king of Sweden's death, Bernard, who commanded the left wing, put himself at the head of the army, and rallied the troops with these words,—“ Swedes, Fins, and Germans ! your and our champion of liberty is fallen ! To me, life is not life, unless I revenge his

death. Charge the enemy bravely, and prove that ye loved the king. Follow me, and fight like honourable and gallant soldiers. God is with us!" The personal valour of Bernard, who was wounded, and his brother, Duke Ernest, materially contributed to the success of that glorious day.

827. Relate an instance of Bernard's independent spirit.

Being admitted to an audience of Louis the Thirteenth, that imperious monarch, on the plea of the duke not being a reigning sovereign, neglected to offer him a seat, and caused it to be intimated to him, that he was expected to be uncovered. Bernard, however, kept his hat on, and reached himself a chair: upon this the king was retiring, but Cardinal Richelieu called him back, and the duke gave his majesty to understand, that he was not to consider him as an officer, but as an ally. The audience took place, and Bernard afterwards won the high esteem of the royal family.

828. When was the peace of Westphalia?

Sixteen years after the death of Gustavus Adolphus. Sweden was a leading power in the general settlement of the interests of Europe. The tyrannical and bigoted family of Austria was humbled, and religion and independence secured to Sweden and the Protestant princes of Germany. This settlement of the civil and religious differences took place one hundred years after the first appearance of Luther.

829. What extraordinary character was opposed to Gustavus in this contest?

Walstein, one of Ferdinand's generals.

830. Who was the great gainer in this struggle?

France,—her grandeur was advanced whilst the ambition of the house of Austria was for ever humbled.

831. Was the constitution of England exposed to extreme danger during the reign of Henry the Eighth?

Yes; had that prince, so tyrannical in his nature, and yet so respected for his courage and understanding, lived longer, or, had his successor resembled him in capacity and disposition, this island, like France, might have lost its liberties for ever.

832. Did Edward the Sixth repeal the acts which violated the acknowledged liberties of the country?

Yes; and yet, this well-intentioned, though inexperienced prince, was persuaded at the close of his reign to issue a proclamation influencing the election of members of parliament.

833. What does the constitutional history of the reign of Elizabeth present?

A continuous struggle between the strength and extent of the royal prerogative and the opposing measures of the House of Commons. The arbitrary conduct of the queen received the abject submission of the greatest men of the age, who became the knights of her caprice, rather than the patriotic legislators of their country and mankind.

834. Who eloquently opposed the queen's attempt to curtail the powers of parliament?

Wentworth; his freedom of speech cost him his liberty, but a month only elapsed before Elizabeth remitted her displeasure! In her own nature most haughty and imperious, this princess, while she asserted her powers of the prerogative, prudently managed to yield at a time and in a manner to render her concessions a favour.

835. Did the sovereign and the Commons of the

reign of James the First resemble their predecessors in disposition ?

Yes ; but the former was far more advanced in folly, and the latter excelled their forerunners in wisdom.

836. Who is supposed to have written the famous "Apology of the House of Commons" to the king touching their privileges ?

The great Bacon ; it was presented to the house by one of its committees. The king appears to have formed one idea of the constitution, and the Commons another. Before the end of his reign he expressed himself in a manner more agreeable to the general spirit of the laws and customs of the realm ; yet his reign was marked by a continual state of warfare, and an open rupture was at last the result.

837. Did this great question of prerogative and privilege agitate the public mind when his successor ascended the throne ?

Yes ; and it would have required far other abilities and virtues than those which Charles possessed, to have been a guardian minister of good to his unhappy country, in a situation so little understood, and, however understood, so encompassed with difficulties.

838. Name some of the parliamentary questions of this reign.

"The Petition of Right,"—the question of tonnage and poundage,—ecclesiastical power,—the law of knighthood ; and the forest laws.

839. In what did the Irish rebellion originate ?

The Queen hearkened to the propositions made by the Irish, who undertook to govern Ireland, and assist the king to subdue the hot spirits at Westminster ;

with this the plot of the insurrection began, but in the first design there was no thought of a massacre. The priests were the chief men who instigated the Irish to all the blood and cruelty that followed.

840. Name some of the leading events that preceded the public execution of the sovereign.

The breaking out of civil war. This was followed by the victory of Naseby, which rendered the cause of the king desperate. Charles appealed to the Scotch army, but they, to their lasting shame, bartered the person of their sovereign for the arrears due to them from the English parliament,—a transaction which reflects no honour to the English themselves.

841. Who delivered a speech in favour of the king at the moment when Cromwell and the army had possession of the metropolis, and it was hazardous to defend the king's answers to the propositions of parliament?

Prynne: this virtuous man showed himself superior alike to the meanness of fear from Cromwell and the soldiers, and the remembrance of all the ferocious insults and all the abominable pains and penalties which he had endured from Charles and his advisers; in defiance of all, he enforced upon the house, by the exertion of every faculty he could command, his own upright declaration, that they were bound in honour, prudence, justice, and conscience to proceed upon the king's propositions to the speedy settlement of the peace of the kingdom.

842. What were the subsequent events?

Cromwell and the army sent Colonel Pride to clear the house of all who were disposed to an accommodation

with the king. The public execution of the sovereign followed—a cruel and dreadful outrage, and the most afflicting and awful event that can be conceived as happening in the midst of a civilized community.

843. Mention some of the difficulties Cromwell had to overcome, while he was endeavouring to seize the power of the state, and afterwards labouring to retain it.

He had to subdue, not only the Royalists, but the Presbyterians; and this not merely by force, but by the most extraordinary performances of cant and hypocrisy that human nature ever yet exhibited.

844. When did Cromwell die?

On the auspicious third of September, 1658: on that day, in 1650, he had defeated the Scotch at Dunbar, and the next year the king at Worcester. He left two sons and four daughters. His sons were weak but honest men. Richard, who had neither genius nor friends, neither treasure nor army, to support him, withdrew his pretensions, and retired to private life. The second son had been made by his father lieutenant of Ireland, and had the more spirit of the two; but his interest was not sufficient to compete with the stronger party. One of Cromwell's daughters was married to Claypole, and died before himself; another to the Earl of Falconbridge; another married the Earl of Warwick's heir, and afterwards Russell. They were wise and worthy women.

845. What was the character of the old Cavaliers?

There were many brilliant and sterling characters amongst them, but the generality were fierce and full of courage after battle, and discreet in managing it during action in the field. When the conflict was over,

all had killed their thousands, and their pretensions exceeded the revenues of Scotland. Of this party, the Earls of Middleton and Glencairn were the chief.

846. What was the grand difficulty of the republican party after the death of Cromwell?

Not being able to retain the army in civil obedience, and not being able to attain to power without the support of the army. This evil always existed, and was always insurmountable.

847. Were the liberties of the country endangered by the concessions of parliament on the restoration of Charles the Second?

No, the "healing parliament" avoided extremes. It confirmed an act of the long parliament for taking away the courts of wards and liveries, together with tenures in capite, knights' service, and tenures in purveyance. It was careful of grants of the public money. In exchange for the court of wards, the king was allowed a grant of particular imposts on ale, beer, and other liquors.

848. What was the character of the Chancellor Clarendon?

His mind was ardent, and his conduct noble; and he never failed, while he possessed any influence, to use it in recalling his sovereign's mind to the great principles of the English constitution as the best security of the crown.

849. Did the king possess a standing army?

Yes; he had a small force of four thousand men, Monk's regiment, which had not been disbanded.

850. How many state criminals were executed?

Only thirteen ; but most of the regicides lost their estates.

851. What may we conclude from this series of events before and after the restoration ?

That the English nation was never sufficiently republican for the purposes of the Independents ; that the Presbyterians sacrificed everything to their hatred of Episcopacy, as Charles did to his love of it ; and that Cromwell could never manage loyalists, Presbyterians, and republicans, all of whom united against him.

852. What succeeded the disgrace of Clarendon ?

The connexion of Charles with Louis the Fourteenth ; and his designs against the civil and religious liberties of this country, by means of Louis's assistance.

853. What marks this period of history ?

The striking assemblage of characters. The reign of Charles presents the impartial and indefatigable Clarendon, succeeded by the vigorous and extraordinary Shaftesbury, who piqued himself on being able to change sides with good address. The profligate but talented Buckingham, and his associates, Rochester and Falmouth, contrast strangely with the intrepid Sidney, the candid and amiable Russell, and his faithful friend the brilliant and courageous Cavendish, the clever and humane Sir William Temple, and the rigid patriot Andrew Marvel.

854. What was the character of the Duke of York ?

He was naturally brave, candid, and sincere, but his principles were undermined by his fortunes and his religion. With the generality, he was considered superior to the king ; this may be attributed to the great desire he manifested to understand affairs,—for he had no true judgment, and was entirely guided by the

counsels of his personal friends. The Duke of Buckingham gave a short and severe, but true character, of the two brothers, when he said, "The king could see things if he would, and the duke would see things if he could." Ignorance and obstinacy were the peculiar failings of James the Second's mind,—mental deficiencies, which probably arose from the imperfect education afforded him, and to which all his mistakes, false opinions, and crimes, are traceable. Clarendon, in his Autobiography, tells us, "That, as a youth, the duke was entirely dependent upon his mother," and there was not that care for the "general part of his education, nor that indulgence to his person, as ought to have been; moreover, the queen's own carriage and behaviour to him was at least severe enough."

855. What was the nature of the resistance of the people of England to James's accession?

Universally religious, but not exclusively so; the Whig party, or exclusionists, urged civil reasons. The king also experienced foreign resistance in his son-in-law the Prince of Orange, the great champion of Protestant Europe, against the enemy of civil and religious liberty, Louis the Fourteenth.

856. Who signed the invitation to William, Prince of Orange?

Devonshire, Danby, Shrewsbury, and Lumly, two commoners, Mr. Sydney and Admiral Russell, and one bishop, Compton, Bishop of London; they assured him of the co-operation of the greater part of the nobility and gentry, and the disaffection of the common soldiers and seamen to the service of James and the popish religion.

857. Do the principles of the Whigs appear in the vote of the house upon the question of the succession?

Yes, in the following assertion, "The king, James the Second, having endeavoured to subvert the constitution of the kingdom, by breaking the original contract between king and people," &c.

858. Name the most important discovery of the fifteenth century.

The discovery of the new world, by Christopher Columbus, which was followed by the conquests and settlements of the different European nations in the East and West Indies.

859. What was the character of the great navigator?

The merits of this extraordinary man are beyond criticism: the amazing energy which his character possessed and exhibited, was so tempered and chastened, as to be rendered faultless to a degree which finds no parallel in history. A calm and benevolent temperament regulated a mind cast in an original and stupendous mould: reasonable in his conclusions, and animated only with the pure and innocent enthusiasm of a projector, his presence of mind did not desert him in the most overpowering calamities; and we may contemplate uninterrupted perseverance, piety, and fortitude in a life chequered with difficulties and defeats, disappointments and injuries.

860. What followed the discovery of America by Columbus?

The conquest of Mexico, by Cortez. A summary account of his proceedings, from the planting of a colony at Vera Cruz, to the subjugation of the Mexican empire, and the discovery of the South Sea, is contained in four letters to his sovereigns: in these the military character and political feelings of Cortez are manifest; but he preserves a distant neutrality in his

relations of the most daring achievements of the enterprise.

861. What cruel outrage excites our abhorrence against the Spanish conqueror?

The barbarous murder of the Mexican officers, and the contumely which their venerable Prince Montezuma experienced.

862. To whom are we indebted for a graphic account of these transactions?

Bernal Diaz del Castillo, a faithful follower and fellow-soldier of Cortez: his original narrative is the recital of a veteran, deeply interested in the extraordinary events he records, and naturally impressed with the importance of the part he and his comrades performed in the tragic scene. There is both force and simplicity in the statements of this old soldier, who, after reconciling his conduct and his conscience, by supposing himself guided by the hand of God through a plundering and destroying career, concludes with this assertion, "There never existed in the world men who, by bold achievements, have gained more for their lord and king than we the brave conquerors, amongst the most valiant of whom I was considered as one, and am the most ancient of all. I say again, that I—I myself—I am a true conqueror, and the most ancient of all."

863. Who was Pizarro?

The conqueror of Peru; a character in which the only redeeming points are a powerful understanding and decisive courage. The case of the vanquished Peruvians excites our compassion, whilst we condemn them for not even attempting the defence of their country.

864. Did the internal divisions and animosities of these two empires render them an easy prey?

Their civil dissensions gave allies to their conquerors, and both Cortez and Pizarro two well knew the inevitable fate of "a kingdom divided against itself." The cruelties of these merciless invaders leave an eternal stain on the Spanish name, and we turn from their black annals to admire the humane and virtuous Las Casas, the celebrated bishop of Chiapa, who ameliorated the sufferings of the defenceless Indians, and reprobated the crimes of their remorseless destroyers.

865. Did the Portuguese rival the Spaniards in their researches?

For some time their navigators cautiously explored down the coast of Africa, until finding in Vasco de Gama and Albuquerque, a second Columbus and Cortez, they doubled the cape and sailed for the Eastern Indies. After this, the conquests and concerns of Spain and Portugal became entangled. The Brazils were seized by the Portuguese, who themselves fell under the dominion of the Spanish crown; and the Dutch appeared as the invaders of the general possessions.

866. What was the natural result of the discovery of these new tracts of country?

Being fresh sources of affluence and strength, they necessarily affected the politics of the nations of Europe, and by aiding the progress of human prosperity, provided means for the progress of the human mind in the advancement of literature and science.

867. Did the revolution of 1688 succeed?

On the whole: on the death of William the Third the crown descended on the principles of the revolution, and provision was made for its subsequent transmission to the Protestant line, in exclusion of the exiled family.

868. Were the two great parties of the state, the Whigs and Tories, conciliated by the propriety and wisdom of the measures adopted by the Prince of Orange when he became king?

No ; though no monarch ever possessed more knowledge of human nature, more equanimity, more elevation of mind ; yet he found it impracticable to harmonise the purposes of his government, men animated by principles and interests so discordant ; but William triumphed over all the difficulties of his situation in supporting successfully the cause of the revolution. His own personal comfort and composure of mind were sacrificed ; and disregarding the embarrassments and dangers it involved, he asserted and maintained the civil and religious liberties of his people and the continent. He was placed at the head of his native country, as the last hope of her safety from conquest and a foreign yoke ; and he was raised to the throne of Great Britain under the name of her deliverer from civil tyranny and religious persecution ; he was considered in this important light by the rest of Europe ; the Empire, Spain and Italy, regarded his counsels as their only resource against the exorbitant ambition and power of Louis the Fourteenth : France herself paid an honest, though ungracious tribute to his merit, by the illiberal joy she manifested upon a false report of his death. Higher eulogium than this could not be given ; and if such be the bright side of a human character, we may gaze till we cannot distinguish its shadows.

869. What was William's military character ?

" He was a patriot and an hero, but not a successful warrior. His armies were disadvantageously formed of officers and soldiers of different nations ; and they were opposed to the most consummate commanders that even France has produced."—" His defeats,"

says Bolingbroke, “were manifestly due, in a great measure, to circumstances independent of him; and that spirit which even these defeats could not depress, was all his own. He had difficulties in his own commonwealth; the governors of the Spanish Low Countries crossed his measures sometimes; the German allies disappointed and broke them often; and it is not improbable that he was frequently betrayed.”

870. With what sentiments was his reign regarded by the two great factions of England?

The Tories, comprehending a large portion of the nation, always looked upon the crown as belonging to the Stuarts; and from the coronation of William, to the acknowledgement of his title by the French king, at the peace of Ryswick, a correspondence was carried on between James and many other persons of rank and consequence in England, to which some of the most zealous supporters of the revolution were accessory. During the temporary absences of William from England, the regency of Mary, as the eldest daughter of the exiled monarch, was agreeable to the Tories; and her prudence and moderation gained friends of every party in the nation.

The Whigs were the authors, the conductors and the maintainers of the revolution, which was legalised by the conventional parliament. This was followed by the “bill of rights;” and in a short reign of thirteen years, we have the questions of “the civil list,” “the place bill,” “the triennial bill,” “the treason bill,” “the liberty of the press,” “standing armies,” and “the responsibility of ministers.”

In judging the respective merits of the factions, we must not lose sight of the fact, that the character of William was capable of shedding a lustre on any cause; whilst, on the other hand, the character of James was calculated to detract from the appearance of justice in his claim.

871. With what did the reign of Anne open ?

The great war of the succession. At the peace of the Pyrenees, the policy of Mazarin united the royal family of France with that of Spain ; and notwithstanding the princes of the house of Bourbon publicly renounced all title to the future succession to the crown, the King of Spain made a will in favour of the French line. This testament was the result of a long series of base intrigues, and was accepted by Louis in defiance of his solemn renunciation.

872. What followed ?

The war with France, an alternative decided by William, just before his death. The first speeches of Queen Anne to the privy council and the two houses, proposed measures for reducing the exorbitant power of France, and securing, by a balance of interest, the liberties of Europe.

873. Who won the victories that distinguished this reign ?

The great Duke of Marlborough. The character of this extraordinary man, acknowledged by his opponent, Lord Bolingbroke, to be "the greatest of generals and of ministers," may be panegyrised in a few words : *He was always right.* In domestic life he was a model of excellence. A spirit of personal ambition never clouded the brightness of his political career ; and as a military genius he united the merits of all commanders of every age and country. Encompassed by difficulties at home and abroad, he accomplished more by scientific warfare than human art or genius ever could before or since ; and the unprincipled Louis was taught the danger of ambition, and the instability of human grandeur.

874. What great question agitated the latter part of Queen Anne's reign ?

That of "the Protestant succession." The great domestic event by which this reign is distinguished, was the union of the two kingdoms of England and Scotland. The connexions of England with other countries have always been marked by a political crisis. The measure of a union with Scotland was adopted under the immediate apprehension of a rebellion. Ireland was united after a rebellion which had nearly torn the two countries asunder. In America the rebellion was successful, and we lost the country for ever.

875. What subjects are presented to our attention on the death of the Queen ?

The violence of the Whigs on their restoration to power. The establishment of the house of Brunswick on the throne of these kingdoms, effected by the policy of Sir Robert Walpole,—a circumstance novel and unpromising as an experiment, but which rendered the revolution of 1688 triumphant.

The events and characters of this age are illustrated in the immortal writings of Pope, of Addison, of Bolingbroke, and Swift. The parliamentary leaders were men of distinguished ability,—Walpole, Pulteney, Shippen, Sir William Wyndham, Lord Hardwicke, Lord Carteret, Lord Chesterfield, and at the close of the same era, the great orator of England, the first Mr. Pitt.

The war between France and England terminated in the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. France relinquished her conquests in the Low Countries for the restitution of Cape Breton. The house of Austria was alone dissatisfied with the dismemberment of Silesia, and the country of Glatz, which was guaranteed to the King of Prussia ; with the loss of Parma and Placentia, which were settled on Don Philip, and the cession of some districts in the Milanese, to the King of Sardinia.

876. What were the subsequent events ?

The rebellion of 1745. The pretender, Prince Charles, landed in Scotland. The hereditary right of the Stuart family won the arms of the clans of Scotland to their cause, and prejudiced Wales and the northern counties of England in their favour. The wise counsels of Duncan Forbes were disregarded, and the legislators of England, in refusing to carry out the measures proposed by Sir Robert Walpole, may blame themselves for the consequent insurrection. Lord Chatham was the first minister who took advantage of the nobler qualities of the Scottish nation, and drew into the service of the state this hardy and intrepid race.

877. What preceded the accession of George the Third?

A period of tranquillity that intervened for seven short years, and the commencement of the great war.

878. What celebrated military sovereign was involved in the polities of Europe during the hostilities between France and England?

Frederic, King of Prussia, a talented and extraordinary character. The inordinate ambition of this prince, displayed in his invasion of the territories of his great political opponent, the young queen Maria Theresa, excites feelings of abhorrence; he, himself, in his historical papers, does not attempt to urge the justice of his cause amongst the many futile reasons he alleges for possessing himself of the Austrian dominions. He ascended the throne at the age of thirty, on the death of his father, the Emperor Frederic William; almost at the same time that the young queen assumed the sceptre of her ancestors, possessed of every personal attraction, strength of understanding, and intrepidity above her sex; but summoned in her twenty-third year, without a counsellor of ability near her, to the

administration of one of the first sovereignties of Europe.

879. How did Frederic of Prussia commence taking advantage of the helpless situation of the young queen?

By resolving to wrest from the house of Austria the province of Silesia. This seizure was first supported by a war, then by a revival of it, then by the dreadful seven years' war. The loss of the contending parties numbered a million.

880. To whom did Maria Theresa look for succour?

Her subjects in Hungary. A sense of justice and feelings of real magniminity had induced her to conciliate these subjects at her accession, by taking the oath which confirmed their just rights, privileges, and approved customs. Her solemn appeal in person to the states of the diet was heard, and answered by acclamations of "Moriāmur pro rege nostro, Mariā Theresā." Enthusiastic and free-born warriors, (Croats, Pandours, and Sclavonians) flocked to the royal standard, and struck terror into the disciplined armies of Germany and France.

881. Whom did the queen appoint to head her forces?

The great General Kevenhuller; this able commander punished the perfidy and atrocity of France with defeat, disappointment, and disgrace. Lower Silesia and Breslau were sacrificed to Frederic, who was compelled to relinquish his further demands.

882. What other leading event forms an important feature in the life and times of Frederic?

The partition of Poland.

883. Under what auspices did George the Third ascend the throne?

He was exempt from foreign partialities, and began to reign at a period when the claims of the exiled family were fallen into contempt. These circumstances emancipated him from the restraints imposed upon the last two monarchs, who, being foreigners opposed to native princes, were frequently obliged to justify themselves to their ministry.

884. Name the causes of the American war.

The attempt of Great Britain to tax America, and the successful resistance of the colony.

885. Who stated the American cause before the British parliament?

Franklin, with the calm eloquence of Burke's celebrated speeches. The debates on this great question are fraught with interest. Mr. Grenville, the original mover of the taxation of America, defended the system he had adopted when in power. To this the great orator, Mr. Pitt, replied. Governor Pownall, who had been a governor in America, opposed the taxation; Colonel Barré and Mr. Pitt also spoke to the same effect. Mr. Fox observed, "that if the tax were persisted in, the country would be forced into open rebellion." Lord North, on the contrary, contended, "that we had only to be firm and resolved, and obedience would be the result." But Lord Chatham and Mr. Burke, in public, and Doctor Franklin and others, in private, all laboured in vain. "The repeal of a few acts of parliament," says Ramsay, "would at this time have satisfied America;" but, confident of victory, the ministers were deaf to petitions and remonstrances.

886. Were all the causes that led to the American war discreditable to our country?

Not in feeling and principle. Notions of political right hurried our ministers and people into coercive

measures. All general principles of legislation and national law seem to lead to the conclusion, that sovereignty must remain with the parent state, and that the power of taxation is involved in the idea of sovereignty. Burke and the Rockingham Whigs were of this opinion; Lord Chatham, and his division of the Whigs, loudly insisted upon the reverse; they contended that the general powers of sovereignty were one thing, and the particular power of taxation another; that this species of sovereignty, taxation, could not be exercised without representation.

887. Was the want of a proper executive government exhibited in a striking manner in America?

The letters of Washington and the pages of the American historians show very plainly how extreme is the hazard, how cruel are the difficulties, when the leaders of the general emotion are not entrusted with proper powers, to supply those who fight in the public cause with the proper means of fighting—with tents, with clothing, with ammunition, and food. It required qualities of the mind and temper far more rare than courage, and of more difficult attainment, to preserve the humour, spirits, and discipline of officers and men, amid the privation and wretchedness they experienced day by day and year by year.

888. Was this remedied?

No, famine was the spectre of the camp; and Washington saw his best officers throwing up their commissions; troops that could not be tempted by the enemy to desert, were yet in a state of mutiny. All were suffering, and all were complaining. Repeated defeats were the disheartening consequences;—and had the tried spirit of their great general failed for an instant, the cause he espoused had perished.

889. Did Washington condemn the provincial legislation?

Yes; he was obliged to confess, that "America was descending from the high ground on which she stood, into the vale of confusion and darkness." The counsels and entreaties of this protecting genius of his country were unheeded by the several states. The recommendations of Congress were disregarded, and the principles of justice violated. "Those meritorious and gallant men, who successfully resisted the British armies, were not only paid in a constantly depreciating paper while the war lasted, but they were never, even in the event, and after the war had ceased, properly paid their arrears." The base, selfish, faithless ingratitude of the states to their disbanded troops fills us with indignation, and is a lasting dishonour to their legislative assembly.

890. Had not Congress the power of taxation?

No; the utmost Congress could do was to consider the situation, and represent the claims to the separate provincial legislatures, from which each member was a delegate; they could not levy any taxes themselves; and so preposterous was the jealousy of the Americans of all power and government, that many years elapsed before any authority existed that could *legally act for* the whole continent.

891. When was the new, or federal, government formed?

In the year 1789. Washington was unanimously elected President, and delivered his first speech to the Senate and House of Representatives on the 30th of April.

892. What was the general feeling in America at the termination of the war?

The succour France had afforded them, naturally attached the American people to that nation. On the contrary, they regarded Great Britain with feelings of enmity,—a sentiment which was discussed even in the senate. The two most important ministers in Washington's cabinet were the secretaries, Hamilton and Jefferson. Colonel Hamilton had passed from the camp into Congress, had served his country in the field, and had witnessed the danger of her imbecile government, the loss of her reputation, and the sacrifice of her best interests. He dreaded the encroachments of the great states more than those of the general government. Mr. Secretary Jefferson had filled the highest office in the local government of Virginia, and had visited France on a diplomatic mission during the first agitation of the revolution; the result was a strong prejudice in favour of the popular cause, and a dislike to monarchy.

893. What was the transcendent merit of Washington?

A discreet and impersuasible judgment; ardent enough to resist the power of Great Britain, and hazard everything on this side the grave for the cause of liberty, yet at a later period, temperate enough to subdue that same spirit of liberty, when it mistook its proper objects, and transgressed its appointed limits. In the American revolution, the lofty enthusiasm of his soul was fired by the sacred cause of freedom—an unwavering beacon-light to his ungrateful country,—but his pure devotion refused to burn incense at the shrine of idolatrous France, when she sacrificed innocent victims to her goddess “reason.”

894. Give the history of New York, from 1609 to 1838.

The spot on which the city of New York now stands,

was, little more than two centuries ago, a forest, inhabited by tribes of untutored Indians. It was in 1609 that the island of Manhattan was first discovered by an English navigator, Henry Hudson, then in the service of the Dutch West India Company ; and he found the tribes inhabiting it so inhospitable, that they refused to hold any intercourse with him, even for trade or barter. The Indians of the continent, on the opposite shore of New Jersey, were more accessible ; and, encouraged by his friendly relations with them, he sailed up the great north river for one hundred and fifty miles, and gave it the name which it now bears—the Hudson. The Dutch availed themselves of this discovery, to make a settlement for trading purposes high up the river, on an island near the present town of Albany, where furs were to be obtained abundantly ; but the hostility of the tribes inhabiting the islands near the sea, on which New York now stands, was not overcome till three years afterwards ; the first fort built there by the Dutch being in 1612.

It was not until 1623 that the Indians could be prevailed upon to part with the land on which New York is built ; and even then, the settlement formed here was confined to an enlarged fort, where the confluence of the two rivers, the north and east, swept round the southern point of the island, and made it a suitable place for a fortification to command the harbour, as the battery of the present city, which occupies the same locality, does at the present time. From this point, the town extended from the fort northwards, and was then called New Amsterdam.

In 1664, the city was taken by the British, from whom, however, it was rescued by the Dutch, in 1673. After remaining in their possession for a year only, it was restored again to the English ; and being then granted by Charles the Second to his brother James, the Duke of York, its name was changed to New York.

895. When was independence proclaimed in New York?

In 1776. In 1765, when the famous Stamp Act produced such excitement in the American colonies as to lead to the meeting of a Congress at New York, composed of delegates from other parts of the colonies. Early in 1776 the American army entered New York, and, on the 8th of July, the celebrated declaration, signed at Philadelphia only four days before, by the founders of the American republic, was read to the inhabitants, and at the head of each brigade of the army. In the same year, however, the British obtained a victory over the American troops in the battle of Long Island, and repossessed themselves of New York. This was in August, 1776; and in September of the same eventful year, a dreadful conflagration occurred, which destroyed nearly five hundred houses, the whole number being then only four thousand, and the inhabitants, reckoned in round numbers, thirty thousand.

896. When was New York finally evacuated by the British?

In 1783; when the American army, led by General Washington, entered and took possession of it; and the anniversary of this event is celebrated every year, with military pomp and festivity, under the name of Evacuation Day, which happens on the 25th of November.

897. When was the first American Congress held in New York?

The members met after the revolutionary war, in the year 1785, in the old city hall; and in April, 1789, General Washington was inaugurated, in the gallery of the same building, as the first President of the United States.

898. Is the site of New York advantageous?

The island of Manhattan, on which the city of New York stands, is a long narrow slip, projecting southwards from the point where it is separated from the main land; its length from north to south being about fourteen miles, and its average breadth not exceeding a mile, the area containing fourteen thousand acres. The east river (in reality an arm of the sea) flows down to the Atlantic, along the eastern edge of this long and narrow island, and the Hudson river flows down to the harbour of New York, along the western margin of the same piece of land, so that throughout the whole of the island, the breadth is nowhere greater than two miles across, and in many places it is not more than half a mile, the average being about a mile throughout.

It is impossible to conceive a more advantageous site for the foundation of a maritime city than this; as it furnishes two lines of river frontage, one on the east and the one on the west, each of fourteen miles in length; and from the central parts of the city, where the streets are open towards the water, the two rivers may be seen, one on each side, from the same point of view, with ships and smaller vessels sailing, or at anchor, in each. Along these river fronts, east and west, so far as the town at present extends, which is about four miles from north to south, the shores are lined with wharfs, for the accommodation of vessels of every size and description, from the sloop of fifty tons to the London or Liverpool packet of one thousand tons; and from the smallest steam ferry-boat to the largest steam-vessels that sail from New York to other ports, north and south of it.

899. How is the New York battery situated?

At the southern extremity of the island of Manhattan,

where the eastern and western rivers have their confluence, and mingle their waters with those of the sea, is an open grassy plot of eleven acres, planted with trees, and laid out in gravel-walks, under the name of the battery; projecting beyond which is a castellated edifice, built on a ledge of rocks, and now called the castle gardens, from its containing within its limits a public garden and promenade, and being a place where fireworks are often exhibited for the gratification of the visitors.

900. Are the Camanche Indians skilful in the management of horses?

In training horses, and dexterity in riding, they equal the Arabs, or Mamelukes of the East; they hang over one side of their horses, and shoot their arrows over the saddle towards their enemies, while they are themselves completely sheltered from their attack, by the interposing body of the horse covering their whole person, which is coiled or gathered up so as to fill only the space between the hanging stirrup and the upper part of the saddle.

901. Describe the Sauks and Foxes.

They are a noble race of men, tall, stout, and muscular, and as hardy and robust as they are large and well-formed. Their costume is almost entirely composed of skins, and furs, and feathers, with the occasional addition of a woollen blanket, of a bright scarlet, saturated with the vermillion paint with which they so copiously bedaub the body. Their head-dresses are mostly feathers differently arranged. They wear leather coverings for the legs, like long gaiters, but loose over the foot, with innumerable strips of leather trailing after them at considerable length behind the heel. To these gaiters are attached a number of silver bells; and whenever they move or walk, it is an evident delight to them to

hear the tinkling of these bells, and the rattle of various plates of metal placed at different points about their garments.

Their weapons are the tomahawk, the heavy-headed and spiked iron mace, and the bow and arrow. Their demeanour is characterised by a dignified reserve, and their aim appears to be not to manifest the least feeling of admiration or surprise. The Sioux and Ioway tribes are not so fine or athletic as the Sauks and Foxes, nor yet so well dressed ; but they are far more communicative.

902. Are the American Indians supposed to be descendants of some of the lost tribes of Israel ?

So recently as the year 1837, Major Noah, a Jew, delivered some lectures before the Mercantile Literary Association of New York, at Clinton Hall, intended to establish this fact. He mentioned the latest notice given of the dispersed tribes of Israel, in the sacred writings, being in the book of Esdras, where the following verses occur : “Whereas thou sawest another peaceable multitude : these are the ten tribes which were carried away prisoners out of their own land in the time of Osea, whom Salmanazar, king of Assyria, led away captive ; and he carried them *over the waters*, so that they came unto another land.”—“They took counsel among themselves, that they would leave the multitude of the *heathen*, and go into a far country, *wherein mankind never dwelt*, that they might there keep their statutes, which they never kept in their own land (Assyria), and there was a great way to go, namely, *a year and a half*.”

It is supposed that these tribes marched from the banks of the Euphrates to the north-east of Asia, some remaining by the way in Tartary and China ; in proof of which, Benjamin of Tudela, who travelled in the eleventh century through Persia, mentions, that in

some of the provinces of that country, at the time of the decree of Ahasuerus, there were at least 300,000 Jews. Alvarez, in his history of China, states, that there had been Jews living in that kingdom for many hundreds of years. Some went to India, we learn from a Hebrew letter from the Jews of Cochin China, written to their brethren at Amsterdam: this gives the date of their settlement in that country, the period when the Romans first conquered the Holy Land, and made Judea a province of the Roman empire, which was some time before the birth of Christ.

From the various parts of Asia, it is believed that the more enterprising and persevering gradually advanced to its north-eastern extremity, till they arrived at Behring's Straits, where, during the winter, it would be perfectly easy to cross over to the nearest part of the continent of America, a distance of less than thirty miles, and rendered easy by the Copper Islands. Here it is believed, that, during a course of two thousand years, they spread themselves from this point northward to Labrador, and southward to Cape Horn, multiplying as they proceeded; some settling in every part, but more populous in the rich countries and agreeable climate of central America, including California, Texas, Mexico, and Peru.

903. When Columbus discovered this continent, what was the state of the races now called Indians?

They were in different stages of civilisation; some were rude, savage, and ferocious, but the greater number were remarkable for qualities that bespoke a noble origin. They had simple, but sublime, ideas of a Supreme Being, unmixed with the least tincture of idolatry; they had courage, constancy, humanity, hospitality, eloquence, love of their families, and fidelity to friends. It is, however, in the religious belief and ceremonies of the Indians, more than in anything else,

that their resemblance may be traced to the people from whom they are believed to have descended.

904. Enumerate the chief points of agreement.

First, their belief in one God. Second, their computation of time by the ceremonies of the new moon. Third, their division of the year into seasons corresponding with the Jewish festivals, of the feast of flowers, the day of atonement, the feast of the tabernacle, and other religious holidays. Fourth, the erection of a temple after the manner of the Jews, with an ark of the covenant and altars. Fifth, the division of their nation into tribes, with a chief, or grand sachem, at their head. Sixth, their laws of sacrifices, ablutions, marriages, ceremonies in war and peace, the prohibition of certain food, according to the Mosaic rule, their traditions, history, character, appearance, affinity of their language to the Hebrew; and finally, by that everlasting covenant of heirship exhibited in a perpetual transmission of its seal in their flesh.

905. Give examples of their use of Hebrew words and customs.

The number is incredible. The name of lightning is *eloah*, and the rumbling of thunder is called *rowah*, from the Hebrew word *ruach*, or spirit. They call the Supreme Being, *La-ak* (Light) *Ish-ta-hoola-aba*; which is distinctly Hebrew, and means, "The great supreme beneficent holy Spirit of Fire, who resides above." They have another name for the Deity, which, like the Jews, they never use in common speech, but only when performing their most sacred religious rites, and then they most solemnly divide it into syllables, with intermediate words, so as not to pronounce the ineffable name at once.

In the sacred dances at the feast of the first-fruits,

they sing *allelujah* and *mesheha*, from the Hebrew of *mesheach*, the Messiah, "the anointed one, exclaiming *Yo, mesheha*," "*He, mesheha*," "*Wah, mesheha*," thus making the *allelujah* the *Mesiah*, the *Jehovah*. On some occasions they sing "*shilu-yo, shilu-he, shilu-wah*," the three terminations making up, in their order, the four-lettered Divine name in Hebrew, and *shilu* being evidently "Shiloth the messenger, the peace-maker."

904. Do the Indian festivals resemble the Jewish?

Yes, they divide the year into four seasons; they celebrate as the Jews do, the *berachah helebana*, "the blessing for the new-moon;" the breastplate of the chief priest is a white conch-shell, ornamented so as to resemble the precious stones in the *Urim*; and he binds his brow with a wreath of swan's feathers, which he calls *Yatina*.

The Indians have their ark, which they invariably carry with them to battle, never suffering it to rest on the ground, or to be unguarded; their faith in the power of their ark is equal to that of the Israelites for theirs. No person is allowed to open all the coverings of this ark; and according to tradition three different persons who were induced by curiosity to examine the mysterious shell, were instantly punished for their profanation by blindness,—the very punishment threatened to the Jews for daring to look upon the holy of holies.

905. Are their sacrifices, bathings, ablutions, and anointings, Jewish in their character?

Yes; their observance of the great day of atonement, about the same period of the year at which it is observed by the Jews, attended with many of the same ceremonies, and for the same object, is extremely remarkable. The abstaining from eating the blood of any animal, from the use of swine's-flesh, of fish with-

out scales, and other animals and birds denounced by the Mosaic law, as impure.

906. Have authors of an early date attempted to prove the descent of the Indians from the Israelites?

Manasseh-ben-Israel, a learned Jew, who flourished about 1650, wrote a treatise on the subject, and many others have supported his views.

907. Does William Penn, the founder of Pennsylvania, mention the character of the American Indians in his writings?

Yes, in a letter to England, he says, "I found them with like countenances to the Hebrew races.—I consider these people as under a dark night, yet they believe in God and immortality, without the aid of metaphysics. They reckon by moons; they offer their first-ripe fruits; they have a kind of feast of tabernacles; they are said to lay their altars with twelve stones; they mourn a year; and observe the Jewish law with respect to separation."

908. Name some of the historians who concur in this opinion.

Emanuel de Merazy, a Portuguese historian of the Brazils; Monsieur de Quigues, the French historian of China; Beltrami, the Italian traveller, who discovered the sources of the Mississippi. The Earl of Crawford and Lindsay, who published his travels in America in 1801, says, "It is curious and pleasing to find how the customs of these people comport with the laws of Moses. It is a sound truth that the Indians are descended from the ten tribes; and time and investigation will more and more enforce its acknowledgment."

909. Are the resemblances more manifest in some tribes than in others?

The Indians of Mexico and Peru are the most enlightened and civilised, though evidently springing from the same stock; and among them, traces of Jewish origin are more apparent.

910. What does Montesini say of them?

That when travelling in South America, "his Indian guide admitted to him that his God was called *Adonai*; and he acknowledged Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, as his ancestors, and claimed to be descended from the tribe of Reuben. He was, in short, a perfect Jew; immense numbers like himself were said by him to live behind the Cordilleras."

911. Does Acosta corroborate this?

Yes, he mentions that they have a tradition of the deluge; that they preserve the rite of circumcision; and in Peru, they eat the paschal lamb; that the Mexicans point out the various stations by which their ancestors advanced into the country, and it is precisely the route by which they must have journeyed into America, supposing them to have emigrated from Asia.

912. What does Manasseh-ben-Israel observe with regard to Mexican traditions?

He declares that they speak of their magnificent places of worship having been built by a people who wore their beards and were more ancient than their Incas.

913. What does Escobartus affirm?

That he frequently heard the southern tribes repeat the sacred notes *Hal-le-lu-yah*.

914. When the Spaniards invaded Mexico, did they find traces of Jewish origin?

Yes ; the Cholula was considered a holy city by the natives, in which the high priest, Quetzacolt, preached " peace to man," and would permit no other offerings to the Master of life, than the first-fruits of the harvest. And Malvenda states that several tomb-stones were found on St. Michael's with ancient Hebrew characters.

915. What did the venerable Prince Montezuma say to the Spanish general, Cortez ?

" We know by our traditions, that we who inhabit the country are not the natives, but strangers who came from a great distance."

916. Is the great temple founded in Mexico by the Inca Yupanque, as described by Clavagero and De Vega, remarkable for its resemblance to the temple of Solomon ?

Yes, in size, in wealth, and in its plan : thus the altar was on the east side of the temple ; there were many doors to the building, all of which were plated with gold ; and the four walls, the whole way round, were crowned with a rich golden garland, more than an ell in width. Round the temple were five square pavilions, whose tops were in the forms of pyramids. The fifth was lined entirely with gold, and, was for the use of the royal high priest of sacrifices. Lord Kingsborough, in his Travels, not only declares that this temple at Palenque *was* built by the Jews, but that he considers it to be an exact copy of Solomon's temple, being precisely after the model described by Ezekiel.

917. What answer did the Natchez tribe give to Du Pratz, when he asked them the question, " Whence do you come ?

Their reply was, " All that we know is, that our fathers, to come hither, followed the course of the sun, and came from the place where he rises. When they

were on their journey, they were nearly perishing, and were brought to this wilderness of the sun-setting, without seeking it."

918. Who is the latest and in many respects the best authority as to the appearance of the Indians?

Mr. Catlin, an American artist, who travelled in the territories beyond the Mississippi and sojourned among the various tribes, from the eastern borders of the United States to the foot of the Rocky Mountains, near the shores of the Pacific; after which he returned to New York, with a collection of more than a hundred portraits of the most remarkable men and women in each tribe, with paintings of their landscape scenery, encampments, villages, hunting-parties, war-dances, religious festivals, games, tortures, and almost every occupation in which they engage; added to which, he amassed a large collection of their dresses, weapons, and ornaments, which form altogether the most complete museum of Indian curiosities that has ever been collected.

This gentleman enumerates many of the customs and usages of the Indians, which he thinks are clearly of Jewish origin: he says, the first thing that strikes a traveller in an Indian country, as evidence of the Indians being of Hebrew descent, is the close resemblance of their deportment and expression of countenance to those people. Mr. Buckingham assures us, there is nothing in their present state and condition which may not easily be accounted for by the long lapse of ages, which have passed since their migrations first began.

919. Have the great speculations in the United States injured the agriculture of the country?

So great has been the mania for buying railway-shares on lines which have never been opened, pur-

chasing lots of land on which towns were *intended* to be built, that the cultivators of soil, instead of attending to their farming pursuits, spent all their time and money in extravagant schemes, to the neglect of agriculture, the great basis of the national wealth, and the surest and steadiest security of individual prosperity in these fertile states.

920. What were the consequences of this inordinate love of gain ?

The country was obliged to import grain for its own consumption, instead of supplying, as it ought from its own surplus, the older countries of Europe.

921. Were there other reasons for this unnatural importation ?

Yes, notwithstanding the deficiency of the supply of grain from its own soil, a vast amount grown in America was subjected to distillation—thus converting what nature has bountifully supplied for wholesome food, into the poisonous and crime-engendering drink of ardent spirits; consequently, this finest grain-producing country on the globe, was obliged to import its own food; and it is stated in the public journals of New York, that in the year 1837, the single port of Baltimore alone received 800,000 bushels of wheat, and 140,000 bushels of rye, from Europe !

922. When did General Washington first conceive the idea of fixing the seat of government of the United States in a central position, so as to be equally accessible to the members of Congress, from all parts of the Union ?

In the year 1790, this design was embodied in a bill, which originated in the senate on the first of June, passed the house of representatives on the 9th of

the same month, and received the sanction of the president on the 16th of July following: the votes taken on this occasion, however, were not unanimous, the division in the senate being fourteen to twelve; and in the house of representatives, thirty-two to twenty-nine.

923. What did this bill authorise?

The setting apart of a territory, not exceeding ten miles square, on each side the river Potomac, to be taken with consent from the states of Maryland and Virginia, between which the Potomac was the then existing boundary-line, to be called "the district of Columbia," and to be made the permanent seat of government.

924. What was the next step taken?

Such a territory having been marked out by commissioners appointed for that purpose, and the arrangements with the two states from which it was taken being satisfactorily completed, the district was formally recognised by law, and made subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of Congress.

925. By whom was the city planned and designed?

By General Washington, whose name it bears. In 1793, the Capitol, or great hall, for the meeting of the two houses of Congress, was commenced. In 1800, the seat of government was removed from Philadelphia to Washington, during the presidency of John Adams; since which, it has always continued there without interruption.

926. How is the Capitol situated?

On the rising ground which overlooks the city to the west and north-west; while on the east and south-east, it is on a level with the general soil. The principal

front is to the east; the other commands a view of the western portion of the city below it, the slope of the declivity being ornamented with terraces, walks, and shrubbery.

927. Describe the Capitol.

The portico is formed of twenty-four Corinthian columns, well executed and of noble dimensions, being four feet in diameter, and thirty feet in height. In the pediment is a fine sculptured group—the Genius of America supported by figures of Hope and Justice, and surrounded by appropriate emblems, of which the national eagle is one of the most prominent, and beautifully executed. The figures are colossal. On the platform of the portico are two statues—War, in the figure of a Roman general, armed for conflict; and Peace, represented by a female figure holding an olive-branch; while, above, is a bas-relief—Washington crowned by Fame. This entrance leads to the rotunda, the centre of the whole edifice, which is crowned by a lofty dome, the upper interior of which is ornamented by caissons, like that of the Pantheon at Rome.

928. Give the observation of an Indian chief on visiting the Capitol.

He was much struck with the sculptures which occupy the panels in the circular wall of the pantheon: the first represents the well-known incident of the humane intervention of the Indian princess, Pocahontas, the daughter of the chief Powratan, to save the life of Captain Smith, which took place in 1606; by Signor Capellano, an Italian, and pupil of the great Canova.

The second piece is by his countryman Cansici; the landing of the Pilgrim Fathers on the rock at Plymouth in Massachusetts, which occurred in 1620. In this group are four figures, a pilgrim, his wife, his child, and an Indian, who, as the pilgrim steps from the boat

to the rock, kneels, and presents him with an ear of corn.

The third subject is the treaty of William Penn with the Indians in 1682, executed by a French artist, Mons. Gevelot. The last piece, in point of date, is a conflict between Daniel Boon, the celebrated American back-woodsman, an early pioneer in the western wilds, who made an intrepid defence, single-handed, against the attack of some hostile Indians in 1773. The space is extremely contracted for this representation, the figure of the dead Indian being coiled up beneath the feet of the two other figures, who are engaged in mortal combat.

The chief, on seeing the collection, remarked that the sculptures represented in succession, but too faithful a history of the intercourse of the white men with the red, from the discovery of the continent by Europeans, up to the present hour.

"In the first piece of sculpture," said he, "you see an Indian woman, the daughter of a chief in the south, interceding for, and effectually preserving, a white man's life. In the second picture, you see the Indian of the north giving a welcome reception to the Pilgrim Father on his coast, and presenting him with corn for his subsistence.

"In the third you see the Indian of the eastern shore giving up his land by treaty for the settlement of Pennsylvania, by which the white man got a firm footing on his territory. And in the last group you see the back-woodsman encroaching upon our most distant hunting-grounds in the far west; and, after shooting down the Indian who is beneath his feet, giving a perfect picture of the actual condition of his whole race, by scarcely leaving him soil enough to die upon."

929. Name the medallion portraits in the centres of the wreaths and festoons of the other panels devoted to sculpture.

Columbus, Raleigh, La Sale, and Cabot, the great navigators whose names are associated with the discovery and settlement of the North American continent.

930. Mention the subjects of Colonel Trumbull's historical paintings, which occupy the larger panels.

The first represents the declaration of independence, as signed on the 4th of July, 1766. It contains portraits of Benjamin Franklin, John Hancock, Thomas Jefferson, and John Adams. The second picture represents the surrender of the British troops under General Burgoyne, to the American revolutionists, under the command of General Gates, at Saratoga, in October, 1777.

The third, the surrender of the British army under Lord Cornwallis, which took place at York Town, in Virginia, in October 1781, to the united forces of America and France, the first commanded by General Washington, the second by General Rochambeau: this painting contains many faithful portraits.

The last picture of the series represents the resignation of his military commission, as commander-in-chief of the American army, by General Washington, which took place at Annapolis, on the 23d of December, 1783, where the Congress was then sitting. These large and fine pictures, which do honour to the national taste, are executed by one of the veterans of the revolutionary war, who served as aid-de-camp to General Washington in 1775, and who is still living.

931. Describe the Senate chamber.

From the rotunda are passages leading north and south to the senate chamber and hall of representatives. The senate chamber is in the north wing. Its form is semicircular, the chair for the president of the senate occupying the centre of the radius line, behind which is an open corridor, or loggia, fifty feet in length and

ten in breadth, separated from the body of the senate chamber by a colonnade of very beautiful pillars, formed of highly variegated and richly coloured breccia, found on the banks of the Potomac, called Potomac marble. These columns are Ionic, and crowned with white marble capitals, after those of the temple of Minerva Polias.

The walls are lined with plaited draperies of a stone-coloured figured damask, between pilasters of Potomac marble; and the draperies of the galleries, and windows above, are of crimson damask, tastefully arranged. Over the chair of the president is a fine portrait of General Washington, and the semi-domed ceiling is richly ornamented with square caissons, in florid style, of stucco: from the centre of the roof is suspended a large ormolu chandelier; the whole producing a richness of effect, well comporting with the dignity of a senate chamber.

932. Describe the Hall of Representatives.

Excepting in size, it is similar to the senate chamber. It is larger, and the capitals of the columns are of white marble, carved after a specimen of the Corinthian order, found at Athens. These columns support a gallery, which runs around the entire hall, usually devoted to ladies. The speaker of the house is seated on an elevated chair; beneath him, in front, rather above the level of the floor, are the clerks and assistants, with the sergeant-at-arms. Fronting these are the semicircular rows of seats for the members, whose number is two hundred and fifty. The hall contains full-length portraits of General Washington and General Lafayette, which are objects of veneration and regard to the American people.

933. How is the basement story of the Capitol appropriated?

A circular crypt occupies the centre, wherein forty pillars support the grooved arches that sustain the whole floor of the rotunda above. Another portion of this basement is occupied as the supreme court of the United States, where the chief justice, with six associate judges, sits to hear appeals from the circuits and other courts of the different states of the Union, and to try such causes as fall within their original jurisdiction.

934. How is the Library of the Capitol furnished?

In addition to the volumes of all the public documents and proceedings of Congress, an annual sum is voted by Congress for the purchase of books in general literature, averaging about 5,000 dollars per annum. The library already contains 25,000 volumes.

935. Does the order of proceedings in the houses differ essentially from the English parliament?

Only in the more strict observance of order and decorum, there being fewer members, and less business to transact. No cries of "hear, hear," ironical cheers, coughing, or exclamations of "oh, oh," "question, question," "divide, divide," ever disturb the gravity of their debates; which may partly be attributed to the rational hours of assembling.

936. What is the usual time of attendance?

The members of committees enter their respective committee-rooms at ten in the morning, and at twelve both houses meet for business; and though a clear majority of each house is requisite to form a quorum, this is rarely if ever wanting.

937. Where is the original Declaration of Independence preserved?

In the state department of the president's house, the public building next in importance to the Capitol. Here also is kept the first commission of General Washington, which, after the close of his military career, he resigned into the hands of the Congress, at Annapolis.

938. Are the American ministers, or other public officers, allowed to retain personal gifts?

No; to guard against bribery and corruption, they are bound to forward all presents from foreign courts and potentates to the department of state, where they are preserved as national property. Among those already received are Damascus-blade swords, Cashmere shawls, a diamond snuff-box, and other valuables.

939. Describe the Arsenal, between the Potomac and Anacosta.

It occupies a quarter of a mile square, and contains a repository of arms, a collection of materials for their manufacture, a magazine and laboratories, a model office for patterns of all improvements in military weapons or engines, a foundry, and a steam-engine of twelve-horse power. The average number of workmen employed is a hundred. The stores comprehend about 800 pieces of cannon of large calibre, and about 10,000 stand of arms, with accommodation in quarters for the officers and men. The navy-yard is situated on the Anacosta, above the point where it meets the Potomac.

940. Where is the General Post-office of the United States?

At Washington. There is a department for the adjustment of Indian treaties, payment of Indian pensions, and settlement of Indian disputes; another for

the sale of public lands; one for the preservation of patents; and a department for registering the copyrights of authors in the United States.

941. Was General Washington's natural temperament calm and collected?

When Gilbert Stuart, an English painter, remarked to him that his head and countenance indicated the possession of strong passions, he replied, "that it was true he was extremely subject to violent ebullitions of anger, which required the greatest vigilance and constant struggles to subdue." This victory over nature reflects more honour and merit on so great a soldier and statesman, whose conduct in public and private life was marked by undoubted purity, and equally free from corrupt, sordid, or mean motives.

942. Which of the American cities is called "The Monumental City?"

Baltimore. The most important public monument is "The Washington Monument;" a noble Doric column of pure white marble, with a colossal figure of Washington on its summit, of the same material.

943. Which is the second monument of consideration?

"The Battle Monument," erected by the Americans in memory of their countrymen who fell at the battle of North Point, when the British attacked Baltimore in 1814. Its effect is striking, though the design is incongruous. The base is Egyptian, rising to the height of about twenty feet from the ground, characterised by the lessening breadth of the square mass as it ascends; on each front is an Egyptian doorway, the whole is surmounted by a deep overhanging cornice, with the winged globe and other Egyptian symbols. Above this base rises a column which represents a

Roman fasces, on the bands of which are inscribed, in bronze letters, the names of those who fell in the battle it commemorates. At the angles of the base are four griffins, and on the summit of the fasces is a figure called "The Statue of the City," holding a wreathed crown for the honoured dead, whilst the American eagle is placed at her feet.

944. Describe the third monument?

This is "The Armistead Monument," erected in the Gothic niche of a building near the city spring, and set apart to the memory of the brave Colonel Armistead, who conducted the defence of Fort M'Henry at the entrance of the harbour, against the British, on the 13th of September, the day following the battle of North Point.

945. Is Baltimore famous for its springs and fountains?

Yes, they add to its beauty and convenience. The city spring is enclosed by an iron railing, and covered by a dome supported by pillars; it is surrounded by trees and foliage, and has a pleasing effect.

946. Describe the other fountains.

The western fountain is in another quarter of the town, similarly covered with a dome supported by columns, and is used for the supply of ships in the harbour of Baltimore with water. The eastern fountain is much larger, and adorned with more architectural beauty. It has an Ionic colonnade, open all round, supporting a roof over the spring, which is enclosed by iron railings. The centre fountain, in front of the market, is also an ornament to the spot. These fountains are a combination of beauty and utility; and the refreshing coolness of their atmosphere, the sparkling brilliance of the waters, the soothing murmur of their falling

sound, and the air of freshness, luxury, and repose, all sources of enjoyments, are in themselves sufficient recommendation.

947. For what is Pennsylvania remarkable?

For the symmetry of its plan, the neatness of its buildings, the air of repose and contentment, and its numerous institutions of benevolence, all bearing the impress of its founder,—the names Pennsylvania and Philadelphia indicating the benign spirit in which these appellations were conceived.

948. Trace the leading incidents of the history of the settlement of the state of Pennsylvania.

In 1680, Charles the Second granted a charter to William Penn, for the settlement of Pennsylvania and Delawar, in consideration of a debt due to his father from the crown, which had not been paid, in consequence of the shutting up of the exchequer by the Earl of Shaftesbury.

The conditions on which “the proprietary,” as Penn was styled, held his vast and valuable grant, was the payment of two bear-skins annually, and a tribute of one-fifth of whatever gold and silver might be discovered in the province, which tribute was to be the personal property of the king. In 1682, Penn, accompanied by one hundred Quakers, left England, in three ships, headed by Colonel Markham, a relative of Penn, as deputy governor of the province.

In addition to the English settlers, there were 3,000 Swedish and Dutch in the adjoining territory of Delawar, and subsequently an augmentation of numbers, of no less than 2,000 persons of education, substance, and strong attachment to civil and religious freedom. In 1682, Penn summoned his first provincial parliament at Chester; and shortly after, the interesting negociation of a treaty with the Indians for the purchase of their

land was commenced by commissioners appointed for the purpose ; which treaty was ratified by Penn in person.

949. What was Penn's parentage and education ?

His father was an admiral in the British navy, under the protectorate of Oliver Cromwell ; and in 1664, he made the conquest of Jamaica, and first added that valuable island to the British colonial possessions. He was subsequently unfortunate in an expedition against St. Domingo, for his failure in which, he was imprisoned by Cromwell in the Tower of London, and never again employed under the commonwealth.

At the restoration of the Stuarts he commanded at sea in the Dutch war of 1665, with the Duke of York ; but in 1668 he was impeached by the House of Commons for embezzlement of prize money, though this was never prosecuted to an issue. His son, William, was a student at the University of Oxford, but at sixteen he embraced the doctrines of the Quaker sect, which led to his expulsion from the University. He afterwards abandoned these notions ; but visiting Ireland in 1666, he again associated with Quakers, and made an open, public, and solemn profession of his determination to adhere to their principles.

950. Was the marriage of Louis the Sixteenth and Marie Antoinette Joseph Jane of Lorraine, Archduchess of Austria, celebrated under fatal auspices ?

Yes ; proper precautions not being taken to prevent the pressure of the crowd assembled at the festival of Paris, fifteen thousand persons died of suffocation. This melancholy event deeply affected the Dauphin, and he for several months appropriated a part of his revenues to the relief of the bereaved. The 21st day of the month was singularly ominous in the eventful reign of this monarch. On that day, in April, 1770, he

was married ; on the 21st of June the fête took place. The grand fête on the birth of the Dauphin was held on the 21st of January, 1782. On the 21st of June, 1791, his flight to Varennes ; on the 21st of September, 1792, the abolition of royalty was decreed ; and on the 21st of January, 1793, his execution.

951. What was the fate of his noble queen ?

Marie Antoinette, daughter of the renowned Maria Theresa, and Francis the First, Emperor of Germany, was tried by the revolutionary tribunal, confined in the common prison of the Conciergerie, and perished on the scaffold, a victim to the unprovoked barbarity and insolence of demagogues.

952. When was the Bastile destroyed ?

July 14th, 1789,—an outrage not to be lamented, save for its contempt for existing authorities, and the cruel murder of the governor, the Marquis de Launay. Louis the Sixteenth had positively declared on his accession, that he would never sign a *lettre de cachet*, and he had faithfully adhered to his oath. Seven prisoners, placed there by his predecessors, were liberated.

953. When did France assume the form of a republic ?

Immediately on the deposition of Louis the Sixteenth. The execution of that monarch, in the eighteenth year of his reign, and the fortieth of his age, is a memorable event in the annals of France : half a century has elapsed since the melancholy cavalcade of condemned royalty passed in gloomy silence, through files of revolutionary soldiers, to the scaffold erected in the Place Louis Quinze ; but the demoralising principles of the revolution still degrade the character of the nation, and countless multitudes have suffered, victims to that tyrannic scourge, called “The Government of the

People," since the last words of Louis, "I die innocent, and I forgive my people," were drowned, by the order of Santerre, in the sound of trumpets and the shouts of the populace.

954. When was religion formally abolished by the National Convention of France?

On the 7th of November, of this memorable year, (1793,) the churches were ordered to be shut; and the decree was passed, that the only French deities should be "Liberty, Equality, and Reason!" Happily for the world, France stands alone in her monstrous iniquity; the apostate land of the virtuous Fenelon has no parallel in her public renunciation of the national worship of a Supreme Being.

955. When did the progress of the French armies oblige Prussia and Spain to sue for a cessation of hostilities?

The successes of the French in Flanders and on the Pyrenees compelled them to make overtures for peace with the republic, in the April and July of 1794.

956. What dreadful contest took place in the year 1796?

The campaigns between the Austrians and the French in the north of Italy, which ended in the subjection of the Italian states to the victorious Buonaparte. The military operations of France were equally successful on the Rhine, and her armies opened a communication with each other from the Meuse to the south of the Alps. The death of General Marceau, who was killed by a Tyrolese trooper, was deeply deplored; his merit was attested by his brave and generous enemies, who fired a salute over his grave.

957. Did Mantua resist the conqueror?

Yes; for a long time General Wurmser bravely defended it from the besiegers, but was at length compelled to surrender. Buonaparte treated the vanquished with the greatest respect, and permitted the general to depart with his suite, and a part of his artillery.

958. How did Buonaparte punish the pope for infringing the treaty?

By marching to Loretto, and pillaging it of its treasures.

959. What occasioned the treaty of Campo Formio?

The approach of the French army to Vienna, and the rapid success of Moreau on the side of the Rhine, terrified the emperor, and he sued for peace. In this treaty the Austrian Netherlands were to remain in the hands of the French, and the Rhine was to form the boundary line between the two nations. At the peace of Campo Formio, the emperor acknowledged the Cisalpine republics.

960. Which was the next victim?

Genoa.—The government was changed, and called the Ligurian republic.

961. When was Rome declared a republic?

In 1799. The murder of Duphot, in the public streets, without any attempt being made to discover the assassin, caused suspicion, and attached odium to the pope, Pius the Sixth. The indignation of the Directory of Paris was excited, and General Berthier despatched to the ecclesiastical territory to dethrone "his holiness," who was first imprisoned, afterwards sent to Sienna, in Tuscany, and from thence to Valence, in France, where he died, A.D. 1799.

962. Was the last expiring effort of the descendants of William Tell, able to withstand the conqueror?

No; in 1798 they were subdued by the superior power of France.

963. What diverted Buonaparte from his project of attacking the British Isles?

He conceived it more expedient to secure the colonies of England, and flattered himself that the possession of Egypt would enable him to appropriate the East Indies. In the vicinity of Cairo a dreadful engagement took place between Buonaparte and Murad Bey, in which the French arms were decisive; this battle is called "the battle of the pyramids." "Remember," said Napoleon to his soldiers, "Remember, that forty ages are beholding us from the summits of those pyramids."

964. Did the loss of Egypt excite feelings of indignation in England?

Yes; and the English government convinced the world they were determined on resistance, by immediately fitting out a fleet under the command of Lord Keith, with a large army on board, headed by Sir Ralph Abercrombie. This gallant officer was mortally wounded at the siege of Aboukir, at the moment when the British arms were victorious, and the designs of France frustrated.

965. What was the result of the first consul's second invasion of Italy?

The celebrated battle of Marengo, which gave the French a decided advantage over the Austrians.

966. When did the Emperor of Germany conclude the treaty of Luneville?

In 1801; Tuscany about the same time changed its name, and became the kingdom of Etruria.

967. What was the state of Portugal in 1801?

The kingdom was overrun by Spanish troops, at the instigation of France, and the unsettled government was unable to command a force sufficient to resist these allied enemies.

968. What were the vicissitudes of St. Domingo during the French revolution?

In the year 1794, the island was invaded by the English, who took possession of some of the principal towns. In 1798, they were compelled to evacuate St. Domingo, by the great chief Toussaint, who subdued that part which formerly belonged to the Spaniards, and in 1801, held the command of the whole island. This virtuous and noble advocate of freedom became an ally of France, and perished with his unfortunate family, a sacrifice to the selfish ambition and treachery of Buonaparte. In 1803, the English sent large fleets to the West Indies, and made an easy conquest of St. Domingo, St. Lucie, and Tobago.

969. What were the arrangements at the peace of Amiens, October 1st, 1801?

Trinidad and Ceylon were to be retained by the English. The Cape of Good Hope remained open to both England and France. The knights of Malta were reinstated under the guarantee of Great Britain, Austria, Spain, Russia, and Prussia. Egypt was restored to the Sublime Porte, and the ecclesiastical territory was to be evacuated by both French and English troops. Switzerland appealed to England, and obtained, through her interference, the withdrawal of the French troops. The king of Sardinia was not mentioned in this treaty, and was eventually compelled to resign his crown to his brother, the Duke d'Aosta. Piedmont was annexed to France, and divided into five departments.

970. Was this general pacification of long continuance?

No; in 1803 war was again declared between England and France; and all the English in Paris were detained prisoners until the restoration of the Bourbons in 1814. The empire was declared hereditary in the family of Napoleon Buonaparte, and his imperial rank notified in foreign courts. Pius the Seventh was summoned to Paris to assist at the coronation, and the legislative body swore "obedience to the constitution of the empire, and fidelity to the emperor." Shortly after this extraordinary elevation, the emperor of Germany changed his title to that of emperor of Austria; and Buonaparte assumed that of emperor of the Gauls.

971. Where was Napoleon crowned king of Italy?

At Milan, in 1805. The magnificent ceremony was performed in the cathedral, where Buonaparte placed Charlemagne's iron crown on his own head, as he pronounced the words, "*Dieu me la donne; grâce à qui la touche.*" Prince Eugene Beauharnois was appointed viceroy of Italy and Genoa.

972. How did the battle of Austerlitz terminate?

Austria was compelled to make humiliating concessions to the French emperor, who retained all his conquests in Moravia, Hungary, Upper and Lower Austria, Tyrol, Carinthia, Styria, Carniola, Goritz, Istria, and the circle of Montabor, in Bohemia.

973. Name some of the events which agitated Europe while it contended with the power of France.

The resistance of Naples, aided by Russia and England, arrested by a manifesto, in which Buonaparte declared, "that the Neapolitan dynasty ceased to exist," the commencement of hostilities between

France and Prussia, Russia taking the part of Frederic William. After many hard battles, Buonaparte entered Berlin as a conqueror ; he made peace with the sultan, Selim the Third ; and the battle of Jena, the capture of Dantzig, the battle of Friedland, and the surrender of Königsburg, completed his triumphs. On the 19th of June, 1807, the treaty of Tilsit was signed, which reduced Prussia one-half, and acknowledged Joseph Napoleon Buonaparte king of Naples, Louis king of Holland, and Jerome king of Westphalia.

974. When did the royal family of Portugal emigrate to the Brazils ?

In 1807. After their departure, Buonaparte divided the kingdom. In 1808, Charles the Fourth of Spain abdicated in favour of his son Ferdinand ; but the crown was seized by the great king-maker, and bestowed upon his brother Joseph Buonaparte. And Murat, who had married the Princess Caroline, succeeded to the kingdom of Naples.

975. What was the state of Sweden in 1809 ?

The young king, Gustavus the Third, was obliged by his people to resign the sovereignty in favour of his uncle, the Duke of Sudermania, who ascended the throne with the title of Charles the Thirteenth. In 1809, Bernadotte, one of Buonaparte's favourite generals, was appointed crown prince of Sweden.

976. When did Buonaparte marry Maria Louisa, daughter of Francis the Second, emperor of Austria ?

January the 12th, 1810. This marriage was solemnised with a splendour France had not witnessed since the brilliant and festive days of Louis the Fourteenth. Four queens supported the train of the empress, and a number of children were christened,—to whom the emperor and empress stood sponsors.

977. What memorable expedition was undertaken in 1811?

The invasion of Russia. The Emperor Alexander, indignant at the endless encroachments of France, had thought proper to violate the treaty of Tilsit, by opening his ports to the British; and a war with France was the consequence. The politic Russians desolated their country as the French troops approached, and destroyed Moscow by fire, to prevent its affording shelter to their enemies. Buonaparte and his army, dismayed by the horrors that surrounded them, solicited an armistice, but received the galling answer from Prince Kutusoff, that "He had orders to listen to no proposals; and that, as he had come there without being invited, he would advise him to get away again as well and as fast as he could." The sufferings of the French army, in its retreat, are without parallel.

978. When was the martial spirit of Europe sufficiently roused to contemplate opposition to the insatiable ambition of France?

In 1813, the allied armies of Europe compelled Napoleon to retreat to Fontainbleau, took possession of Paris, and obliged the Empress Maria Louisa and her son the young king of Rome, to leave the capital. After the abdication of Napoleon, his son was called Prince of Parma, and subsequently Duke of Reichstadt. The success of the British arms at Thoulouse, and the return of the Bourbons, rendered the situation of Buonaparte hopeless; and after many deliberations, he retired to Elba with an annual pension of 6,000,000 crowns.

979. When did Napoleon return to France?

He assembled his few troops in Elba on the 12th of April, 1815, and eluding the vigilance of the British

cruiser appointed to prevent his escape, embarked and sailed for Frejus in Var, where he threw the Elba colours into the sea, and hoisted the national cockade. His progress through France was wonderful and romantic ; he alone, amidst the bewildered and appalled, calmly measured how far he could trust the ground on which he stepped so fearlessly ; he, alone, knew that the troops, dismissed under various pretences from Elba, had dispersed into the different regiments, and, unwittingly to themselves, had effected his purposes, by spreading disaffection to the Bourbons ; and conscious that he remounted his throne by the mere ascendancy of the military faction, he anticipated the policy of his enemies, and summoned with energy his great diplomatic powers to meet the exigencies of the moment.

980. What was the determination of the allied powers when they received intelligence of Buonaparte's arrival in France ?

The confederacy resolved to support the Bourbons, and to preserve inviolate the treaty of Paris of 1814. Britain, Russia, Prussia, Austria, and Holland, each agreed to bring into the field 150,000 men, one-tenth cavalry, and proportionate artillery. A manifesto was published, in which it was declared that Buonaparte, by entering France with an armed force, had destroyed the only legal title he possessed ; and having placed himself without the pale of civil and social relations, as an enemy and disturber of the tranquillity of the world, had rendered himself liable to public vengeance ; and the great congress of the nations issued a proclamation that they would not lay down their arms until "Napoleon Buonaparte was completely deprived of the power of exciting disturbances, and of being able to obtain the chief power of France."

981. When and where did the engagements take place?

On the memorable 16th of June, 1815, the battle of Ligny was fought, in which Prince Blucher was defeated, with the loss of twenty thousand men. The struggle between the conflicting armies for the possession of Quatre Bras was desperate and bloody; and on the 18th of June the great decisive battle on the plains of Waterloo deprived Buonaparte of the imperial diadem, and restored Louis the Eighteenth to the throne of his ancestors. Of this splendid but dearly bought victory the Duke of Wellington was heard to say, "Believe me, nothing can be so melancholy as such a battle won, except a battle lost." Buonaparte abdicated in favour of his son, and threw himself on the protection of the British. On the 13th of October he landed at St. Helena, where he remained until his death, on the 5th of May, 1821.

982. What measures were considered necessary to secure the public peace on the restoration of Louis the Eighteenth?

A new administration was formed, the chamber of deputies dissolved, the peers and officers who had served Buonaparte were either deprived of rank or dismissed from Paris, and restricted to a residence in the interior towns, the public press was suppressed, and the army was disbanded and remodelled on a different principle. The character of Louis was not sufficiently dazzling to satisfy the French people, but he acted upon all occasions conscientiously, and his death was sincerely regretted. On the preceding evening, the 15th of September, 1824, he called Monsieur to his bedside, and addressed him thus: "Judgment will soon be passed on my reign; but whatever may be the opinion which may prevail, I assure you, brother, that every

thing I have done has been the result of long deliberation. I may have been mistaken, but I have not been the sport, the slave of events. I have carefully weighed every measure, and discussed its merits before it has been carried into effect."

The coronation of Charles the Tenth took place on the 28th of May, 1825, at Rheims; the act of his abdication in favour of his grandson was placed in the hands of the duke of Orleans on the 2nd of August, 1830; but the claims of Henry the Fifth were disregarded, and on the 9th of August the crown was tendered to Louis Philippe. Prince Talleyrand was appointed ambassador to England; and the interests of France could not have been entrusted to one more able to secure them. The masterly mind of this unrivalled politician did more for the real glory of his country since 1789 than either Napoleon or the Bourbons.

983. Name some of the events of this period.

The death of Alexander, emperor of all the Russias, on the 1st of December, 1825. He was succeeded by his brother Nicholas, Constantine having resigned all claim to the crown. John the Sixth of Portugal, died in 1826, in the Brazils; and his son, Don Pedro, relinquished the throne of Portugal in favour of his daughter, and accepted the imperial diadem of Brazil. Maria da Gloria was declared queen of Portugal, and her aunt appointed regent. "The Treaty of London" presented a memorial to the Sublime Porte, offering to mediate between the Turk and Greek; the first overture was rejected by Reis Effendi, and several subsequent attempts to negotiate were equally unsuccessful, and a fatal and unfortunate engagement preceded the independence of Greece. Algiers was taken by the French on the 5th of July, 1830.

Belgium revolted from Holland, and the national congress assembled at Brussels declared their independ-

ence, and adopted a monarchical government, entirely excluding the house of Orange. Prince Leopold of Coburg was elected king on the 4th of June, 1831. The Dutch retained possession of the citadel of Antwerp, although the city was occupied by the Belgians, until the French and English compelled Holland to submit to a treaty, they, in conjunction with her enemy Belgium, formed for her; and the French troops besieged the Dutch garrison in the citadel, who, under the command of General Chassé, made a gallant resistance, and obliged them to yield the fortress.

984. What is the state of government in Egypt?

The pacha is seated firmly and securely on the throne; and though tributary to the sultan, does not scruple to draw his sword against his master whenever it suits his convenience. He retains a large army and navy, and governs capriciously and despotically without any regular legislative code.

985. Name the principal events of Mohammed Ali's reign.

Like Bernadotte of Sweden, the pacha rose from the ranks. He distinguished himself in the bloody wars that distracted Egypt under the Mamelukes, and by acts of daring, cruelty, intrigue, and treachery, placed himself on the throne of the caliphs;—nor has he ever ceased to exercise these Turkish accomplishments.

The extermination of the Mamelukes, the former lords of Egypt, though their numbers appear insignificant in the lists of his thousands of slaughtered victims, brands Mohammed Ali the prince of traitors and murderers. Invited to the citadel under the guise of friendship, they smoked the pipe of peace in his presence, whilst preparations were making for their general massacre. They were fired upon and butchered, bravely but hopelessly defending themselves to the

last; one alone of the feeble band of five hundred leaped his gallant steed over the walls of the citadel. This cruel deed has been compared to the slaughter of the Janizaries by sultan Mahmoud; but the expedient is not parallel. The Janizaries were a powerful body, insulting and defying the throne. The sultan staked his head upon the issue; and he was not master of his own dominions, until he had unfurled the sacred standard of the prophet, and the bodies of 30,000 Janizaries were floating down the Bosphorus.

Subsequently, the pacha destroyed the Wahabees on the Red Sea, and subdued the countries above the Cataracts of the Nile, to Senaar and Dongola. Fond of war, and coveting the islands of Candia and Cyprus, he sent a large fleet and army, commanded by his son, Ibrahim Pacha, to aid the sultan in his contest with Greece; and in return for the services of his wild Egyptians, received the desired reward.

986. Enumerate his more recent conquests.

Availing himself of a trifling dispute with the governor of Acre, he invaded Syria, and besieged it successfully. His victorious armies under his son Ibrahim took Jerusalem, Damascus, and Aleppo; and beating the sultan's forces in every fresh encounter, in the severities of winter he led his Egyptians over Mount Taurus, defeated the grand vizier with more than one hundred thousand men, almost under the walls of Constantinople, and would have driven the sultan from the throne of his ancestors, if the Russians, the old enemies of the Porte, had not marched to his relief.

The army of the Pacha has been raised and disciplined according to European tactics, and he has constantly aimed to introduce the improvements of other countries. The revenue is increased, principally by the culture of cotton; and Egypt, from the Mediterranean to the Cataracts, is perfectly safe for the traveller.

987. What is the state of the Arabs in Egypt?

Extreme poverty. These subjects of oppression are totally unable to resist the iron rule of their Turkish governors. A Bedouin of the desert is a formidable-looking object ; his dark, half-naked figure, long beard, piercing black eye, and alternately fierce or listless manner, present an appearance, which an enormous sword slung over his back, and a rusty matchlock in his hand, do not render less suspicious. The travelling Arab is mercilessly pressed into the service of the pacha. The governors of towns and sheiks of villages have orders to supply so many soldiers to the government, and the stranger, who has no redress, is deemed a less troublesome captive than a subject.

988. Is this the condition of the Bedouins of Sinai?

No ; these children of the desert refused subjection to the tyrant. Mohammed Ali used energetic measures to reduce the wild independence of the race, to impose taxes upon them, and establish his oppressive system of military conscription ; but the free spirit of the untameable could not brook this invasion of their rights. They plundered his caravans, drank his best Mocha coffee, and appropriated, without compunction, the spices of Arabia and the rich silks of India.

Invincible in their mountain passes, they defied Hassam Bey and his two thousand five hundred followers ; and four hundred Bedouins proved a sufficient force to detain prisoners these invaders of their territory, until a treaty of perpetual amity had been ratified by the pacha, in which they agreed to be his subjects, provided their natural freedom were uncontrolled, and they were exempted from all duties and taxation.

989. Describe the siege of Missolonghi.

For more than a year its brave garrison resisted the combined strength of the Turkish and Egyptian armies,

and when all hope was gone, they resolved to cut their way through the enemy, or die in the attempt. Numbers remained with the desperate purpose of resisting until they should bring a large body of Turks around them, having a mine underneath charged with thirty kegs of gunpowder, to blow up all together. Famine and more than one hundred thousand bombs and balls had reduced the inhabitants and destroyed their homes and bastions, when these modern heroes of Greece swore to contest the land of Missolonghi, foot by foot, without listening to capitulation, and dying in her defence, merit a soldier's grave beneath the ruins of their city.

990. Name the intrepid Suliote, who headed the desperate sortie.

Marco Bozzaris: for two months, with but a few hundred men, protected only by a ditch and a slight parapet of earth, he defended the town against the whole Egyptian army. In stormy weather, with scanty and unwholesome provisions, and no covering but his cloak, he passed his days and nights in constant vigil; in every assault his sword cut down the foremost assailant, and his voice, rising above the din of battle, struck terror into the hearts of the enemy.

He proposed the fatal attack on the whole army of Mustapha Pacha, and called upon all who were willing to die for their country to stand forward. The entire band of two thousand advanced to a man. Unwilling to sacrifice so many brave men in a death struggle, he chose three hundred, the sacred number of the Spartans, his tried and trusty Suliotes; at midnight he sallied forth their leader, directing that not a shot should be fired until the sound of his bugle gave the signal. His last command was, "If you lose sight of me, seek me in the pacha's tent," and it was in the moment of victory, whilst ordering the pacha to be seized, that the

first missile of death struck him. His voice was heard cheering his men, until another ball passed through his head, and he was borne lifeless from the field of his glory. The grave of this brave and devoted chief is marked by a few rough stones ; and not far from the spot stands a huge pyramid of skulls of the men who, but a few years ago, died sword in hand for the freedom of their country,—a memorial of reproach for the powers of Christendom, who affected to condemn the Greek revolution as fool-hardy and desperate.

991. Does the character of the late mighty potentate of the Sublime Porte, the unrivalled shedder of blood, excite unmixed horror ?

No ; though the slaughtered Janizaries, and the drenched plains of Greece, bastinadoes, impalements, executions, and tortures, stain every page in the annals of his life, Sultan Mahmoud is rather to be considered as having been the creature of circumstances, whom the dire necessity of an unenviable position first drove, and then goaded on to acts of cruelty, than the willing arbiter of fate to thousands ; and as such, he claims peculiar interest. His mild, affable manners, and the simplicity of his appearance, contrasted singularly with the gorgeous scenes around him, and the despotic mandates to his subjects, “I command you, my slave, that you bring the head of my slave, and lay it at my feet.”

992. Is the sultan’s form of address to foreign powers in the same lofty, imperious tone ?

Yes ; “I, who am, by the infinite grace of the great, just, and all-powerful Creator, and the abundance of the miracles of the chief of his prophets, emperor of powerful emperors, refuge of sovereigns, distributor of crowns to the kings of the earth, keeper of the two very holy cities, (Mecca and Medina,) governor of the holy city of Jerusalem, master of Europe, Asia, and Africa, con-

quered with our victorious sword and our terrible lance, lord of two seas, (Black and White,) of Damascus, the odour of paradise, of Bagdad, the seat of the caliphs, of the fortresses of Belgrade, Agra, and a multitude of countries, isles, straits, people, generations, and of so many victorious armies who repose under the shade of our Sublime Porte,—I, in short, who am the shadow of God upon earth.”

993. What claim has the Emperor and the Autocrat of all the Russias to the throne of the Cæsars?

John the Great married the Princess Sophia, daughter of Thomas Palæologus Porphyrogenitus, brother of Constantine Palæologus, who died in 1453, after seeing the empire fall into the hands of the Turks. The pretensions of John and his successors are founded on this alliance, and the title of Czar or Cæsar has been retained with an eye to Constantinople.

994. What is the condition of the Russian serfs?

They are a degraded race, intellectually and physically, but they differ from other slaves, in their indisputable right to remain on the estate where they are born. One-sixth of the whole peasantry of Russia, amounting to six or seven millions, belongs to the crown, and inhabits the imperial demesne, paying an annual tax. In particular districts many have been enfranchised, and are burghers and merchants. The comparatively liberal and enlightened policy of the present emperor is diffusing a more general system of melioration to the state of these subjects of his vast empire.

The remainder of the serfs belong to the nobles, and some seigneurs possess from seventy to more than a hundred thousand! They frequently send the more intelligent to Petersburgh or Moscow, to learn mechanical arts, and either employ them on their own estates,

or permit them to trade for themselves, on payment of an annual sum, giving them passports which protect them through Russia. This often enables them to accumulate sufficient to ransom themselves and their families; but the desolate and uncultivated wastes of Russia show the truth of the judicious reflection of Catherine II., "That agriculture can never flourish in that nation where the husbandman possesses no property."

995. With what feelings do the serfs of Russia regard the emperor?

It is a singular fact, that there is always an unbounded affection for the great head of oppression, who is regarded as the protector against their immediate masters. A noble instance of this spirit of devotion which animated the corps of ten thousand of the north, and extended to the utmost bounds of the empire, was presented during the invasion of Napoleon.

They received orders to march from St. Petersburg to meet the advance of the French army; the emperor reviewed them, and is said to have shed tears at their departure. Arrived at the place appointed, Witgenstein ordered them to fall back, not willing to lead them to what he saw would be inevitable death; but they answered, "No; the last promise we made the emperor our father, was, that we would never fly before the enemy, and we keep our word." Eight thousand of their number died on the spot, and bequeathed their heroic spirit to their fellow-bondsmen. From this great body of the peasantry, Russia recruits her immense standing army, and in case of invasion, raises in a moment, a nation of soldiers.

996. What is the government of Russia?

A military despotism: her immense army, nominally amounting to 1,000,000, even on the peace establish-

ment numbers actually 600,000, of which 60,000 follow the person of the emperor, and form a gorgeous array in numbers and military bearing, in costliness of armour and equipment.

In a body, the Russian soldiers present a magnificent appearance. When the serf is enrolled, his hair and beard are cut off, excepting the moustache; his uniform is simple and graceful, and he goes through his beautiful evolutions with an ease which appears mechanical. The regiments are composed of representatives from all the nations under the sway of Russia; Cossacks of the Don, and the Wolga, and the Black Sea, in a loose uniform of blue cloth, riding on small horses, with high-peaked saddles, and carrying spears eight or ten feet in length. Calmucs in their extraordinary war-dress. The Kirquish, a noble race, from the steppes of Siberia, the élite of barbaric chivalry, in blue and silver, Grecian helmets, and bearing a variety of splendid arms, the yataghan alone costing 1000 rubles. They are all nobles, and have no regular duty, excepting attendance on the imperial family; they are Mohammedans, and at home are perpetually at war among themselves.

Six feet is the standard height of the imperial guards; their uniform is white, with Hessian boots, and enormous swords. The striking figure of the emperor himself, who appears the natural head of this brilliant army, towers even above his gigantic staff.

997. What deed of terrible sublimity and undaunted patriotism emblazons the page of Russia's history?

The burning of Moscow. On the approach of the grand army of Napoleon, the city was deserted, her magnificent palaces forsaken by their owners, and her 300,000 inhabitants vanished, as if they had never been. Silent and amazed, the dense columns of the French filed through the desolate streets. At midnight the flames of the mighty sacrifice burst forth, and the

pure incense, freedom, arose with fragrance from the great altar of self-devotion. It was while the roof of the Kremlin was on fire, and the panes of the window against which he leaned were burning to the touch, that Napoleon watched the course of the flames, and exclaimed, "What a tremendous spectacle! These are Scythians indeed!"

998. What was the fatal issue of the Polish revolution?

Exhausted by her internal commotions, Poland,—gallant, chivalric, heroic Poland,—fell, crushed by the whole colossal force of the great northern despot. The moment when she could have been restored to her rank among the nations, she was deserted, and none came to her aid. France made an empty boast that 100,000 men stood ready to march to her assistance; but France and all Europe looked on and saw her fall.

Her expiring Diet made a last appeal, "In the name of God; in the name of liberty; of a nation placed between life and death; in the name of kings and heroes who have fought for religion and humanity; in the name of future generations; in the name of justice and the deliverance of Europe;" but her dying importunity was unheard! Her last battle was lost by treachery, under the walls of Warsaw.

Poland is expunged by an imperial ukase from the map of Europe; every national vestige is destroyed: her language and her costume are proscribed, and her white eagles lie trampled in the dust. Her crown is forfeited to the treasury of the autocrat, and her throne, unspotted with dishonour, brilliant as the stars which glitter on its surface; the seat of Casimir, Sobieski, and Stanislaus Augustus, is exhibited as a Russian trophy—a monument of departed glory—a memorial of its brave defenders.

999. What is the form of government in China?

Nominally patriarchal. The emperor claims to be the father of his subjects; he exercises supreme, absolute, and unchecked power over one-third of the human race. His decree will deprive any one, of three hundred and fifty millions of human beings, of rank, possessions, liberty, or life. At the head of this stupendous system of legislature, the emperor is styled "The Son of Heaven,"—"The Ten Thousand Years." In an official document sent to the governor-general of Bengal, his titles were, "The flower of the imperial race, the sun of the firmament of honour, the resplendent gem in the crown and throne of the Chinese territories."

The succession is at the absolute disposal of the emperor. His immediate assistants are the Nuy-kō, or great council of state. The chief counsellors are four in number, two Tartars and two Chinese. The members are selected from the imperial college of the Hāulin.—The Keun-ke-ta-chin, a body of privy counsellors.—The Lüh-poo, or six boards for conducting the details of public business, viz., the board of appointments, the board of revenue, the board of rites and ceremonies, the military board, the supreme court of criminal jurisdiction, and the board of public works.—The Lefāu-yuen, or office for foreign affairs, the members of which court are always Mongol or Manchow Tartars.—The Too-cha-yueu, a body of censors, forty or fifty in number, who are sent as imperial inspectors or spies, to different parts of the empire.

The provinces are governed by chief magistrates, Foo-yueu; two of these officials are occasionally under a superior, Tsung-tūh: these governors have subordinate to them an army of fourteen thousand civil magistrates. No individual is allowed to hold office in the province where he was born, and public functionaries change places periodically. Office and rank are not hereditary in China. The emperor assumes an imperial and characteristic title on ascending the throne.

The standing army of the "Celestial Empire" numbers about 700,000, of whom 80,000 are Tartars, the rest native Chinese, with about 18,000 military mandarins, of all grades. This force is styled "The Army of Heaven." Of artillery they know little; having no gun-carriages, their cannon are fixed immovably in one position.

1000. Name the causes of the war with Affghanistan?

The object of the campaign of the British army of the Indus, was to depose the reigning monarch of the Affghans, Ameer Dost-Mahomed, and restore to his ancient possessions Shah Shooja-ool-Moolk. Nadir Shah took Cabul by storm, in 1739, and carried away great treasure. After he was assassinated, Ahmed Shah, an Affghan general in the Persian service, withdrew with his native troops, intercepted considerable treasure, made himself master of Cabul, and was proclaimed king of the Affghans, by the title of Doora Dooranee.

He reigned twenty-six years, during which time he invaded India four times. His son, Timour Shah, succeeded him, in 1773, and though a weak prince, retained the reins of government twenty years: during his reign the city increased in prosperity, and he died universally lamented, leaving sixty sons, one of whom, Shah Zimaun, ascended the throne. After some years of desultory warfare, this prince was deposed by his brother, Mahmood, assisted by Futtie Khan, the chief of the Barukzie tribe. Mahmood's reign was short; two years of tyranny and luxury were spent, and a third brother, Shah Shooja, was raised to the supreme command. Mahmood, who was confined in the Bala Hissar or High Fort, supposed to have been built by the Mogul emperors, escaped, and fled to Teheran; and aided by Futtie Khan, defeated the army of Shah Shooja in two engagements, between Peshawur and Cabul, and at Candahar.

The unfortunate Shah fled for refuge to the Punjab, and after being plundered of all his jewels and valuables by Runjeet Singh, threw himself on the protection of the British government. Shah Mahmood had a turbulent reign; becoming suspicious of the popularity of his vuzeer, Futtu Khan, he caused him to be put to death. The numerous and powerful relatives of the vuzeer were instantly in open rebellion, and the whole country presented a scene of contention and warfare; Mahmood was dethroned, and Dost Mahomed, the late Ameer, proclaimed king; his brothers being established in Candahar, Jellalabad, and other important positions.

In 1832, the British entered into negotiations with several native potentates, for opening the navigation of the Indus, and extending British commerce into Central Asia; but the intrigues of Persia, under the influence of Russia, retarded the execution of the plan. The siege of Herat unmasked their designs, and the chiefs of Candahar having espoused their cause, the peace and security of the frontiers of India were threatened, and British influence ceased to have effect. It became necessary for the governor-general to adopt prompt measures, and it was considered politic to reinstate Shah Shooja-ool-Moolk on the throne of Afghanistan, presuming that, having been kindly entertained and pensioned by the British, he would prove a firm friend and ally. The attempt has been crowned by victory; how dearly purchased, many hearts can tell.



FL. 12-11-56

**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

267539

Author Beddome, P.A.

Title State of nations.

H. of
B. & '7.

**Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU**

